MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 39

Duke Ernst

Herzog Ernst

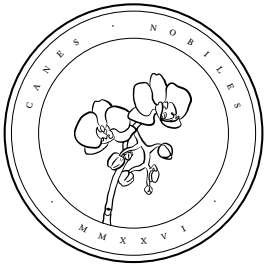
Duke Ernst

Exile and the Wonders of the East

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

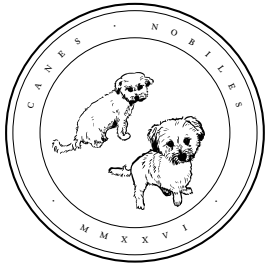


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 39 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Herzog Ernst, herausgegeben von Karl Bartsch (Wien: Wilhelm Braumüller, 1869), the B text, pp. 15–125

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Bartsch numbers them, every fifth verse in the outer margin. The paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · Ernst and Adelheit 7
II · The Emperor's Marriage 26
III · The Count Palatine's Lie 46
IV · The Princes Plead 63
V · Speyer 81
VI · Regensburg Yields 100
VII · The Crusade 121
VIII · Grippia 139
IX · The Empty Castle 155
X · The Crane-Folk 175
XI · The Captive Princess 191
XII · The Princess's Death 213
XIII · Escape from Grippia 230
XIV · The Magnet Mountain 249
XV · The Griffins 268
XVI · Arimaspi 284
XVII · The Ears and the Pygmies 304
XVIII · The Giants 323
XIX · Moorland and Jerusalem 344
XX · The Reconciliation 360

I · ERNST AND ADELHEIT

The poet promises a tale of a good knight's wonders against those at home who doubt such tales. Duke Ernst of Bavaria, fatherless as a child, is raised by his mother Adelheit, taught French and Latin and sent to Greece for his breeding, and grows into a generous and valiant lord with Count Wetzel at his side. Adelheit refuses every suitor; the emperor Otto, widowed of the saintly Ottegebe of England and founder of Magdeburg, asks his princes for a wife, and they name Adelheit.

Nu vernemet alle besunder:
Now hear all separately:

ich sage iu michel wunder
I tell to-you great wonder

von einem guoten knehte.
of a good knight.

daz sult ir merken rehte.
that shall you mark rightly.

ez ist ze hœrenne guot,
it is to hear good,

ez gît vil manigen hôhen muot,
it gives very many-a high spirit,

swâ man von degenheite seit.
wherever one of valor tells.

genuogen ist von herzen leit
to-many is from heart grievous

die dâ heime ir lant bûwent
who there at-home their land till

unde nimmer des getrûwent
and never of-that trust

swaz man von heldes nœten saget.
whatever one of hero's distresses tells.

die sint an wirdekeit verzaget:
they are in worthiness despaired:

sie habent der arbeit niht erliten
they have of-the toil nothing suffered

und wirt ouch von in gar vermiten,
and becomes also by them wholly avoided,

wan sie dar zuo niht entugen
for they there to not avail

und velschent die rede swâ sie mugen
and falsify the speech wherever they can

sie strîtent vaste dâ wider
they strive hard there against

und druckent die rede nider,
and press the speech down,

als ez mit alle ein lügene sî:
as-if it with all a lie be:

den wonet niht guoter tugende bî.
to-them dwells not of-good virtue by.

swâ danne guote knehte sint,
wherever then good knights are,

den ist diu rede als ein wint,
to-them is the speech as a wind,

die in fremden rîchen
who in foreign realms

dicke sorclîchen
often anxiously

varent durch vermezzenheit
fare through daring

und beidiu liep unde leit
and both joy and sorrow

lîdent undr unkunder diet:
suffer among unknown folk:

die widerredent des niet
they gainsay of-that not

swaz man dâ von gesagen kan,
whatever one there of tell can,

wan des sie selbe versuochet hân.
for of-that they self tried have.

Diz spriche ich allez umbe daz
This say I all about that

daz ir merket deste baz
that you mark the better

ditze liet daz ich wil sagen,
this song that I will tell,

wan ich iuch niht wil verdagen
for I you not will keep-silent

die nôt und starke arbeit,
the distress and strong toil,

die der herzoge Ernest leit,
which the duke Ernst suffered,

do er von Beiern wart vertriben.
when he from Bavaria became driven.

in den buochen stêt geschriben,
in the books stands written,

daz er der Beier landes wielt
that he of-the Bavarians' land ruled

und vil frümeclîch enthielt
and very valiantly maintained

die armen zuo den rîchen.
the poor to the rich.

mit êren lobelîchen
with honors praiseworthy

stuonden alliu sîniu dinc.
stood all his things.

manlîch hielt der jungelinc
manfully held the youth

diu erbe diu im sîn vater liez
the inheritance which to-him his father left

sô lange unz in dâ von verstiez
so long until him there from thrust

ein keiser mit des rîches kraft.
an emperor with the realm's force.

des muost vil werder ritterschaft
of-that must very worthy knighthood

durch vorhte von im kêren.
for fear from him turn.

dô rûmte er ez mit êren
then left he it with honors

und mit im manic helt guot,
and with him many-a hero good,

die mit im lîp unde guot
who with him life and goods

wolten wâgen unz an den tôt.
would risk until to the death.

sît kam er in manige nôt
afterward came he into many-a distress

die er vil manlîch überwant:
which he very manfully overcame:

er was ein gemuoter wîgant.
he was a spirited fighter.

Ich wil iuch vür baz wizzen lân,
I will you forth further know let,

wie daz kam daz der edel man
how that came that the noble man

von dem rîche alsô verdarp.
from the realm so perished.

man sagt, dô im sîn vater starp,
one says, when to-him his father died,

er was ein kleinez kindelîn.
he was a small little-child.

er liez im mit den erben sîn
he left to-him with the inheritance his

ze dienste manigen guoten kneht,
to service many-a good knight,

die in zugen, daz was reht.
who him reared, that was right.

sie werten im alle bôsheit.
they warded from-him all wickedness.

sîn muoter hiez Adelheit
his mother was-called Adelheit

und was ein hôchgebornez wîp.
and was a high-born woman.

vil tugende pflac ir junger lîp
much virtue tended her young body

und lebte in grôzen êren.
and lived in great honors.

daz kint bat sie dô lêren
the child bade she then teach

beide welhisch und latîn.
both French and Latin.

ouch sande sie daz kindelîn
also sent she the little-child

durch zuht ze Kriechen in daz lant.
for breeding to Greece into the land.

dâ wurden im die liute erkant
there became to-him the people known

von maniger hande wîsheit.
of many-a kind wisdom.

ze aller slahte frümekeit
to of-all kinds valor

fleiz sich daz kint sêre:
applied itself the child sorely:

des wuohs vil hôch sîn êre.
of-that grew very high his honor.

Sus vertreip der jungelinc gemeit
Thus passed the youth merry

diu jâr sîner kintheit,
the years of-his childhood,

daz er versuochte fremdiu lant.
that he tried foreign lands.

des wart er wîten erkant
of-that became he widely known

über manic künicrîche,
over many-a kingdom,

da er vil lobelîche
where he very praiseworthily

sich ze rede hâte brâht.
himself to speech had brought.

des wart sîn dicke wol gedâht
of-that became of-him often well thought

ze aller slahte guote.
for of-all kinds good.

er was in diemuote
he was in humility

getriuwe unde milde.
faithful and generous.

des wurden im die schilde
of-that became to-him the shields

vil wîten gesamenôt,
very widely gathered,

sô er ir bedorfte ze sîner nôt.
when he of-them needed for his distress.

Er hiez biderbe unde guot
He was-called upright and good

und wande allen sînen muot
and turned all his mind

ze frümelîchen dingen:
to valiant things:

des muose im wol gelingen.
of-that must to-him well succeed.

er vorhte schelten unde spot:
he feared rebuke and mockery:

beidiu durch êre und durch got
both for honor and for God

teilte er swaz er mohte hân.
dealt-out he whatever he might have.

er gruozte schône sîne man
he greeted beautifully his men

und bôt in michel êre.
and offered to-them great honor.

des dienten sie im sêre
of-that served they him sorely

sît dô er kam in arbeit
since when he came into toil

und den grôzen kumber leit,
and the great trouble suffered,

dô wurden sie im undertân
then became they to-him subject

swar zuo er sie wolde hân
whither to he them would have

und stuonden im frumlîchen bî.
and stood to-him valiantly by.

er wære eigen oder frî,
he were serf or free,

der verliez in keiner nie
of-them left him none ever
die wîle sie der tôt lie.
the while them the death let.

Sus wuohs der kindesche man,
Thus grew the childlike man,
unz er sich selbe des versan,
until he himself self of-that bethought,
daz er wâfen mohte leiten.
that he arms might bear.
dô hiez er im bereiten
then bade he for-himself prepare
swaz er dar zuo solde hân.
whatever he there to should have.
vil harte man daz gewan:
very hard one that got:
ros phert und gewant.
steeds palfreys and clothing.
dô nam der edel wîgant
then took the noble fighter
mit grôzen êren daz swert
with great honors the sword
und mit im ein knabe wert,
and with him a youth worthy,
grâve Wetzel sîn man,
count Wetzel his man,
der nie zageheit gewan,
who never cowardice gained,
und ander sîn gesinde.
and other his household.
sie wâren von kinde
they were from child
gezogen mit grôzer êre.
reared with great honor.

des muose erm immer mêre
of-that must he-to-him ever more

leisten triuwe und wârheit.
perform faith and truth.

durch deheine arbeit
for any toil

wolder im nie geswîchen.
would-he from-him never fall-away.

er gestuont im frümelîchen
he stood to-him valiantly

bî unz an sîn ende.
by until to his end.

vil manic ellende
very many-a exile

wart versuochet von in beiden,
became tried by them both,

und wurden doch nie gescheiden
and became yet never parted

durch deheiner slahte nôt,
for of-any kind distress,

unz sie ze leste schiet der tôt.
until them at-the last parted the death.

Dô der helt vil lobesam
When the hero very praiseworthy

mit êren alsô swert genam
with honors so sword took

und grâve Wetzel der helt balt,
and count Wetzel the hero bold,

dô hâte er rîchen gewalt.
then had he rich power.

lützel ieman bî im verdrôz.
little anyone with him wearied.

ez was keiner sîn genôz
it was none his peer

in allen diutschen rîchen,
in all German realms,

der sich zim mohte gelîchen,
who himself to-him might liken,

sô verre man in erkande.
so far one him knew.

dô fuor er ze lande
then fared he to land

mit vil stolzer ritterschaft.
with very proud knighthood.

im volgete grôziu kraft,
him followed great force,

beide ritter und knehte.
both knights and squires.

der phlac er wol ze rehte:
of-them took-care he well by right:

er gap in schatz und gewant.
he gave to-them treasure and clothing.

mit sîner willigen hant
with his willing hand

machte er im die werlt holt.
made he to-himself the world gracious.

er ensparte silber noch daz golt
he not-spared silver nor the gold

vor keinen sînen êren.
before any his honors.

des wurden dem vil hêren
of-that became to-the very lordly-one

mit triwen bereit sîne man
with faith ready his men

swa ez an die nôt solde gân.
wherever it to the need should go.

Diu herzoginne Adelheit
The duchess Adelheit

was des frô und ouch gemeit,
was of-that glad and also merry,

daz sie daz kint hâte erzogen
that she the child had reared

und sô gar für unbetrogen
and so wholly for undeceived

was gelobt übr alliu lant.
was praised over all lands.

dô êrte sie den wîgant
then honored she the fighter

und zôch sich wîplîche.
and bore herself womanly.

ir gerten fürsten rîche
her desired princes rich

durch ir tugentlîchen ruom.
for her virtuous fame.

durch wîsheit und durch rîchtuom
for wisdom and for riches

sie manic fürste gerne nam.
her many-a prince gladly took.

dô wolt diu frouwe lobesam
then would the lady praiseworthy

nie keinen man erwerben.
never any man win.

sie wolte alsô ersterben
she would so die

in kiusche und in reinikeit:
in chastity and in purity:

daz was den werden herren leit.
that was to-the worthy lords grievous.

Dô sie die rede erfunden,
When they the speech found-out,

dô hielt in den stunden
then held in the hours

daz rœmische rîche
the Roman realm

ein künic gewalteclîche,
a king mightily,

der was Otte genant.
who was Otte named.

dem diente manic fürsten lant
to-him served many-a princes' land

in diutscher und in welscher zungen.
in German and in Romance tongue.

ouch hete der künec betwungen
also had the king subdued

der Winden lant und Friesen.
the Wends' land and Frisians.

der moht man vil dô kiesen
of-them might one many then choose

die an in muosen kêren.
who to him must turn.

er truoc mit grôzen êren
he bore with great honors

vor fürsten die krône.
before princes the crown.

der keiser rihte schône
the emperor judged beautifully

beidiu witwen und weisen
both widows and orphans

vor aller hande vreisen.
against all kinds perils.

sîn gebot stuont bî der wide.
his command stood by the halter.

er schuof den aller besten fride
he made the of-all best peace

beide vür unde wider
both forth and back

der ê oder sider
which before or afterward

oder immer mê werde
or ever more may-be

ûf der Sahsen erde.
on the Saxons' earth.

Der herre stiften dô began,
The lord to-found then began,

als ich iu wol sagen kan,
as I to-you well tell can,

durch den himelischen ruom
for the heavenly fame

ein rîche erzebistuom:
a rich archbishopric:

daz ist genuogen wol bekant.
that is to-many well known.

Meideburc ist ez genant
Magdeburg is it named

und lît an der Elbe stade.
and lies on the Elbe's shore.

do geschach dem tiufel grôzer schade,
then happened to-the devil great harm,

dô sie von im kêrten
when they from him turned

und ir sælde mêrten.
and their blessedness increased.

der keiser twanc sie âne wer.
the emperor compelled them without defense.

sant Maurizen und sîme her
to-Saint Maurice and his host

wart ez gewîhet ze êren
became it consecrated to honors

und des obersten lop ze mêren,
and the highest's praise to increase,

der im die sælde tete bekant.
who to-him the blessedness made known.

er gap dar liute unde lant
he gave there people and land

und machte ez krefteclîche
and made it mightily

an urboren rîche.
in revenues rich.

des hât er immer mêre
of-that has he ever more

vor gote lop und êre.
before God praise and honor.

Der edel künic hêre
The noble king lordly

durch die gotes êre
for the God's honor

stift die selben samenunge.
founded the same community.

des gnâdet vil manic zunge
of-that thanks very many-a tongue

gote durch in tegelîch.
God for him daily.

ich sage iu daz der künic rîch
I tell to-you that the king rich

hôher tugende kunde phlegen.
high virtue could practice.

er was des lîbes gar ein degen
he was of-the body wholly a thane

und ein lobelîcher wîgant.
and a praiseworthy fighter.

alliu rœmischiu lant
all Roman lands

wâren mit im wol behuot.
were with him well guarded.

er was ein edel ritter guot.
he was a noble knight good.

in kunde ze rehte erbarmen
him could to right move-to-pity

die rîchen und die armen.
the rich and the poor.

alle die des geruochten
all those-who of-it desired

die sîn helfe suochten,
who his help sought,

den was sîn gâbe vil bereit.
to-them was his gift very ready.

der herre in sîner kintheit
the lord in his childhood

hete genomen ein êlîch wîp.
had taken a wedded wife.

diu lac tôt, ir edel lîp
she lay dead, her noble body

wart bestatet schône
became interred beautifully

in dem münster frône.
in the minster holy.

diu was geborn von Engellant:
she was born from England:

ir gemüete hâte sie gewant
her mind had she turned

gar an unsern trähtîn.
wholly to our Lord.

diu vil sælege künigîn
the very blessed queen

was geheizen Ottegebe,
was called Ottegebe,

ein wol berndiu wînrebe.
a well bearing grapevine.

sie was gote gehôrsam.
she was to-God obedient.

dô sie ir ende dô genam,
when she her end then took,

si besaz daz gotes rîche
she possessed the God's kingdom

mit freuden êweclîche.
with joys eternally.

ir sêle ist sælc, als was ir lîp.
her soul is blessed, as was her body.

und wizzet daz got durch daz wîp
and know that God for the woman

vil schœner zeichen liez geschehen,
very beautiful signs let happen,

als man noch hiute wol mac sehen,
as one still today well may see,

swerz gerne dâ wil schouwen,
whoever-it gladly there will behold,

daz got der edelen frouwen
that God to-the noble lady

vil grôze genâde gebete
very great grace gave

die wîle daz sie lebete.
the while that she lived.

Alsô was des keisers lîp
So was the emperor's body

immer mêre ân êlîch wîp,
ever more without wedded wife,

als ir dâ vor hât vernomen,
as you there before have heard,

und hæte gerne genomen
and would-have gladly taken

eine diu im gezæme
one who to-him should-befit

und dem rîche rehte kæme
and to-the realm rightly should-come

ze einer küniginnen.
as a queen.

dô hiez er im gewinnen
then bade he for-himself gather

die fürsten und sagte in sînen muot.
the princes and told them his mind.

er sprach 'swaz iuch dunket guot
he spoke 'whatever you seems good

und da ez mit êren müge sîn,
and where it with honors may be,

dar helft mir, lieben friunt mîn,
there-to help me, dear friends my,

einer frowen diu iu gevalle.
to-a lady who you pleases.

daz verdiene ich umbe iuch alle
that repay I for you all

swie iu immer liep is:
however to-you ever dear is:

des sît alle an mich gewis.'
of-that be all of me certain.'

Do die fürsten daz vernâmen,
When the princes that heard,

zesamene sie dô kâmen.
together they then came.

ze râte sie dô giengen,
to council they then went,

wie sie ez ane viengen
how they it on should-take

daz man den künec gewerte
that one the king granted

des er an sie gerte.
of-what he of them desired.

sie sprâchen alle gemeine,
they spoke all in-common,

sie enwisten keine
they knew none

diu im sô rehte kæme,
who to-him so rightly should-come,

ob er sie ze wîbe næme,
if he her to wife should-take,

so diu herzoginne Adelheit:
as the duchess Adelheit:

diu wære mit der wârheit
she were with the truth

gelopt vor manigem wîbe.
praised before many-a woman.

sie wisten an ir lîbe
they knew in her body

über al wandelbæres niht:
over all of-blameworthy nothing:

'des ir diu meiste menige giht,
'of-that to-her the most multitude grants,

die sich wîsheit versinnen.'
who themselves of-wisdom understand.'

möhte er sie gewinnen,
might he her win,

'ez solde uns alle dunken guot.'
'it should us all seem good.'

ob der keiser sînen muot
if the emperor his mind

an sie wolde kêren,
to her would turn,

er möhtes wol mit êren
he might-her well with honors

dem rîche ze frouwen nemen:
for-the realm as lady take:

sie solde in allen wol gezemen
she should to-them all well befit

durch ir wîplîche tugent.
for her womanly virtue.

sie hæte sich in ir jugent
she had herself in her youth

vil wünneclîche her behuot.
very delightfully hither guarded.

sie was biderbe unde guot.
she was upright and good.

The princes praise Adelheit to Otto, who writes her a letter of courtship; she consults Ernst, who urges her to accept, and the wedding is held at Mainz with great splendor. Otto and Adelheit live in love, and Otto summons Ernst, adopts him as a son, gives him power over the realm, and takes him into his council.

Die rede sie alle geviengen.
The speech they all took-up.

die vürsten vür giengen
the princes forth went

und sageten dem künige mære
and told to-the king tidings

von der frouwen lobebære,
of the lady praiseworthy,

von ir adel und von ir tugent,
of her nobility and of her virtue,

von ir witze und von ir jugent
of her wit and of her youth

und von ir lobelîchem sinne:
and of her praiseworthy mind:

sie möhte wol küniginne
she might well queen

mit êren sîn des rîches,
with honors be of-the realm,

wan ir wære niht gelîches
for to-her were nothing alike

under frowen die sie erkanden
among ladies whom they knew

in allen diutschen landen.
in all German lands.

do der keiser ir rede vernam,
when the emperor their speech heard,

der rât ime wol gezam
the counsel to-him well befitted

durch ir tugentlîchen muot,
for her virtuous mind,

der frouwen edel unde guot.
of-the lady noble and good.

der herre langer niht beleip:
the lord longer not remained:

mit sîn selbes hant er schreip
with his own hand he wrote

einen brief so er beste kunde,
a letter as he best could,

süeziu wort von sînem munde,
sweet words from his mouth,

so er aller friuntlîchest mohte.
as he of-all most-friendly might.

einn fürsten der im dar zuo tohte
a prince who to-him there to availed

er mit dem brieve sande
he with the letter sent

gên Beiern zuo dem lande,
toward Bavaria to the land,

der im ze boten wol gezam.
who to-him as messenger well befitted.

dô der helt hin kam
when the hero thither came

und mit dem brieve vür gienc,
and with the letter forth went,

diu frouwe in harte wol enphienc
the lady him very well received

mit minneclîchem gruoze.
with loving greeting.

der helt dô mit muoze
the hero then with leisure

der frouwen redelîch sagete,
to-the lady eloquently told,

als ir enboten habete
as to-her sent-word had

von Rôme der keiser rîche,
from Rome the emperor rich,

der ir sô friuntlîche
who to-her so friendly

den brief hâte dar gesant.
the letter had there sent.

'dâ bî sult ir sîn gemant,
'there by shall you be reminded,

daz ir mit güetlîchem site
that you with kindly manner

tuot des iuch der keiser bite
do what you the emperor begs

und al die fürsten sîne man.
and all the princes his men.

des müezt ir immer êre hân,
of-that must you ever honor have,

ob ir leistet des rîches bete.'
if you perform the realm's request.'

Diu frowe dô zühteclîche tete.
The lady then courteously did.

sie neic, dô sie den brief nam.
she bowed, when she the letter took.

sie sprach 'ich sol gehôrsam
she spoke 'I shall obedient

vil billîch dem rîche sîn.'
very rightly to-the realm be.'

dô hiez diu edeliu herzogîn
then bade the noble duchess

einen boten balde gân
a messenger quickly go

nâch einem ir kappelân,
after one her chaplain,

der ir den brief ze rehte las,
who to-her the letter to right read,

swaz dar an geschriben was.
whatever there on written was.

vernemet wie er beginne.
hear how he begins.

'vil edeliu herzoginne,
'very noble duchess,

disen brief hât dir gesant
this letter has to-thee sent

und schreip in mit sîn selbes hant
and wrote it with his own hand

des rîches vogt und herre
the realm's protector and lord

und manet dich, frouwe, verre,
and urges thee, lady, earnestly,

daz du durch dîn hôhe tugent
that thou for thy high virtue

und durch dîn wirdeclîche jugent
and for thy worthy youth

merkest waz ez diute.
markest what it means.

im habent al sîn liute
to-him have all his people

gesaget von dîner güete.
told of thy goodness.

nu solt du dîn gemüete
now shalt thou thy mind

wenden an mîne minne.
turn to my love.

ich mache dich küniginne
I make thee queen

ob allen rœmischen rîchen.
over all Roman realms.

sô kan sich dir gelîchen
so can itself to-thee liken

in der werlde kein wîp.
in the world no woman.

sô muoz dîn minneclîcher lîp
so must thy lovely body

sîn getiuret immer mêr.
be ennobled ever more.

sô dienent dir, frouwe hêr,
so serve thee, lady lordly,

die fürsten al gelîche.
the princes all alike.

beide arme und rîche,
both poor and rich,

die ich in mînem rîche hân,
whom I in my realm have,

sint dir alle undertân.
are to-thee all subject.

sô maht du, frouwe edel und guot,
so mayst thou, lady noble and good,

hôhe tragen dînen muot
high bear thy spirit

durch die êre manicvalt.
for the honor manifold.

mir ist gesaget und gezalt
to-me is told and recounted

vile von dîner frümekeit.
much of thy valor.

nu solt du, frouwe gemeit,
now shalt thou, lady merry,

mir und den fürsten volgen,
me and the princes follow,

und bis mir niht erbolgen
and be with-me not angered

daz du mich, frouwe, lobest ze man:
that thou me, lady, promisest as husband:

sô kan dir nimmer missegân
so can for-thee never go-amiss

die wîle daz du leben salt.
the while that thou live shalt.

ich gibe dir wîten gewalt
I give to-thee wide power

dâ du maht wol gebieten
where thou mayst well command

und freude dich genieten,
and in-joy thyself satisfy,

swie dir, frowe, gevalle:
as to-thee, lady, pleases:

sô dienent sie dir alle,
so serve they thee all,

die dir nû wellent glîch sîn:
who to-thee now will equal be:

über die bistu künigîn.'
over them art-thou queen.'

Dô diu frowe vil lobesam
When the lady very praiseworthy

disen brief gar vernam
this letter wholly heard

und daz ir sagt des rîches bote,
and what to-her told the realm's messenger,

ir herze huop sich ze gote
her heart raised itself to God

und danket im der grôzen êren
and thanked him for-the great honors

die got an sie wolde kêren.
which God on her would turn.

des lobte in dô diu guote
for-that praised him then the good-one

und mante in in ir muote
and urged him in her mind

dazz ir ze heile müese ergân.
that-it to-her for salvation must go.

nâch ir sune sie sande sân
after her son she sent at-once

und bat in daz er kæme
and bade him that he should-come

und dise rede vernæme,
and this speech should-hear,

die botschaft von dem rîche:
the message from the realm:

sie solde billîche
she should rightly

dar über sînen rât hân.
there over his counsel have.

schiere kam der junge man
soon came the young man

dâ er sîne muoter vant.
where he his mother found.

diu frouwe sagete im alzehant
the lady told to-him at-once

umb die botschaft diur dô kam.
about the message which-to-her then came.

als er diu mære dô vernam,
when he the tidings then heard,

sie tâten im von herzen wol.
they did to-him from heart well.

er sprach ‘dâ von ich immer sol
he spoke ‘there from I ever shall

deste hôher mînen muot tragen.
the higher my spirit bear.

ir sult im nimmer versagen,
you shall to-him never refuse,

sît ir in dunket alsô wert,
since you him seem so worthy,

daz er iwer ze wîbe gert:
that he of-you as wife desires:

des suln wir mit iu wesen frô.
of-that shall we with you be glad.

sît ez sich hât gefüeget sô
since it itself has arranged so

daz ir den fürsten allen
that you to-the princes all

ze frowen sît gevallen,
as lady are pleasing,

des ensol iuch nimmer riuwen.
of-that shall you never rue.

daz râte ich iu mit triuwen,
that counsel I to-you with faith,

daz ir ez willeclîchen tuot,’
that you it willingly do,’

sprach der junge degen guot.
spoke the young thane good.

Dô diu frowe von im vernam,
When the lady from him heard,

daz ir diu bete wol gezam
that to-her the request well befitted

und ir mit triuwen riet dar zuo,
and to-her with faith counseled there to,

den boten frumte sie duo
the messenger dispatched she then

von ir minneclîche
from her lovingly

und enbôt dem keiser rîche,
and sent-word to-the emperor rich,

dar zuo allen sînen man,
there to all his men,

sie wolde im wesen undertân
she would to-him be subject

swes er an sie gerte.
of-whatever he of her desired.

der bote dannen kêrte
the messenger thence turned

mit frôlîchem muote.
with joyful spirit.

dô streich der helt guote
then hastened the hero good

dannen naht unde tac.
thence night and day.

lützel ruowe er phlac,
little rest he took,

unz er den rîchen keiser vant.
until he the rich emperor found.

dem herren sagte er zehant
to-the lord told he at-once

als er dort hæte vernomen.
as he there had heard.

dô was er grôze willekomen
then was he greatly welcome

den fürsten und dem rîche,
to-the princes and to-the realm,

daz er sô frümeclîche
that he so valiantly

gewurbe des rîches êre:
should-win the realm's honor:

des dancten sie im sêre.
for-that thanked they him sorely.

Do gewan der edel keiser guot
Then won the noble emperor good

einen frôlîchen muot
a joyful spirit

von der frouwen wol getân.
from the lady well made.

dar zuo alle sîne man
there to all his men

fröweten sich der botschaft.
rejoiced themselves of-the message.

dô hiez er mit grôzer kraft
then bade he with great force

bereiten spâte unde fruo
prepare late and early

swes man bedorfte dar zuo.
whatever one needed there to.

diu hôchzît wart gesprochen
the wedding-feast became proclaimed

über sehs wochen
over six weeks

ze Meinze vür die rîchen stat,
at Mainz before the rich city,

als der edele künec bat.
as the noble king bade.

zehant reit er dannen
at-once rode he thence

frôlîch mit sînen mannen
joyfully with his men

ze Beiern nâch der frouwen.
to Bavaria after the lady.

dâ mohte man wol schouwen
there might one well behold

vil manigen ritter gemeit,
very many-a knight merry,

do diu herzoginne Adelheit
when the duchess Adelheit

ze frowen dem rîche wart gegeben.
as lady to-the realm became given.

dô sach man frôlîchen leben
then saw one joyfully live

den keiser und al sîne man.
the emperor and all his men.

dô sie die frouwen fuorten dan,
when they the lady led thence,

dô reit vil manic guoter degen
then rode very many-a good thane

frôlîchen under wegen,
joyfully on-the way,

spilnde under schilde.
playing under shields.

daz wîte gevilde
the wide field

wart etewâ vil enge
became somewhere very narrow

von manigem gedrenge
from many-a throng

daz se ûf ir reise nâmen,
which they on their journey took,

ê sie ze Meinze kâmen.
before they to Mainz came.

Dô sie kâmen über Rîn,
When they came over Rhine,

dâ diu hôchzît solde sîn,
where the wedding-feast should be,

vür die stat ûf daz velt,
before the city onto the field,

dâ was vil manic guot gezelt
there was very many-a good tent

geslagen ûf daz grüene gras.
pitched upon the green grass.

maniger hande spil dâ was
of-many kinds play there was

dâ der keiser brûte.
where the emperor wed.

dâ hôrte man vil lûte
there heard one very loudly

schrîen unde wuofen,
cry and shout,

schallen unde ruofen
resound and call

und maniger hande seitspil.
and of-many kinds string-music.

dâ was kurzwîle vil,
there was pastime much,

sô man ze hôchzîten tuot.
as one at wedding-feasts does.

nieman was dâ ungemuot,
no-one was there downcast,

der arme noch der rîche.
the poor nor the rich.

über allez rœmisch rîche
over all Roman realm

wart nie schœner hôchgezît
became never more-beautiful wedding-feast

gesehen weder ê noch sît
seen neither before nor afterward

durch des rîches êre.
for the realm's honor.

des wart der künic hêre
of-that became the king lordly

gelobt in manigen landen.
praised in many lands.

er gap den wîganden
he gave to-the fighters

manigen samît breiten,
many-a samite broad,

die mûl mit den gereiten,
the mules with the harnesses,

dar zuo silber unde golt
there to silver and gold

unde manigen rîchen solt
and many-a rich pay

hiez er dar den rîchen tragen.
bade he there to-the rich carry.

iu künde nieman gesagen
to-you could no-one tell

die wünne und der freuden zil.
the delight and the joys' goal.

dâ was ouch varnder harte vil:
there was also of-wanderers very many:

den wart dô allez vol gegeben,
to-them became then all fully given,

daz sie mit freuden muosen leben.
that they with joys might live.

Do diu hôchgezît ein ende nam,
When the wedding-feast an end took,

vür den keiser lobesam
before the emperor praiseworthy

die fürsten sunder kâmen,
the princes separately came,

dâ se urloup von im nâmen,
where they leave from him took,

vil probste und manic bischof.
many provosts and many-a bishop.

dô schiet sich der grôze hof.
then parted itself the great court.

sie fuoren an manigen wegen,
they fared on many ways,

die getriuwelîchen degen,
the faithful thanes,

und schieden sich lieplîche unt frô.
and parted themselves lovingly and glad.

dannen reit der künic dô
thence rode the king then

mit der frouwen wol getân.
with the lady well made.

im volgte nâch vil manic man,
him followed after very many-a man,

unz er sie dar brâhte
until he her there brought

da er blîben gedâhte.
where he to-remain thought.

sie kunde im freude mêren.
she could to-him joy increase.

er phlac mit grôzen êren
he tended with great honors

der edelen küniginne.
the noble queen.

durch ir vil edelen minne
for her very noble love

sô liebte im ir vil schœner lîp.
so endeared to-him her very beautiful body.

im was daz wünneclîche wîp
to-him was the delightful woman

lieber danne dehein guot.
dearer than any goods.

er was vil sanfte gemuot
he was very gently minded

ze allen zîten wider sie.
at all times toward her.

ouch beswârte sie in nie
also burdened she him never

mit keiner slahte schulde.
with of-any kind guilt.

ouch huot sie sîner hulde
also guarded she his favor

mit wîplîcher güete.
with womanly goodness.

swenn im von ungemüete
whenever to-him from ill-humor

an sînem willen iht missegie,
in his will aught went-amiss,

vil schône sie daz undervie.
very beautifully she that forestalled.

sie wonte im alsô güetlîch mite,
she dwelt him so kindly with,

daz er aller unrehten site
that he of-all unright customs

durch ir willen gar vergaz:
for her will wholly forgot:

des was in beiden deste baz.
of-that was to-them both the better.

Der keiser und diu künigin
The emperor and the queen

wârn in der minne under in,
were in the love between them,

sie hâten freude âne nît
they had joy without envy

dar nâch mit êren lange zît,
there after with honors long time,

daz in dehein ungemach
that to-them any hardship

von ir vetern nie geschach
from their kin never happened

an keiner slahte dingen.
in of-any kind things.

wie kunde in baz gelingen?
how could to-them better succeed?

sie lebten wünneclîche
they lived delightfully

(bî im stuont ouch daz rîche
(by him stood also the realm

mit êren fridelîche:
with honors peacefully:

ez was dô niht sîn glîche)
it was then not his like)

und ân alle schande.
and without all shame.

der künic dô boten sande
the king then messengers sent

nâch Ernest dem herzogen,
after Ernst the duke,

dem er was vil ungelogen
to-whom he was very unfeignedly

holt und willic genuoc,
gracious and willing enough,

wan er im holdez herze truoc
for he to-him gracious heart bore

durch liebe sîner muoter.
for love of-his mother.

im enbôt der degen guoter,
to-him sent-word the thane good,

der keiser, liep und allez guot,
the emperor, love and all good,

als ein herre sînen mannen tuot,
as a lord to-his men does,

und in triuwelîcher minne,
and in faithful love,

daz er die küniginne
that he the queen

sîne muoter solde sehen.
his mother should see.

daz liez der helt sô geschehen:
that let the hero so happen:

der herre zim die liute nam,
the lord to-himself the people took,

mit den er hêrlîche kam
with whom he lordly came

ze hove da er den künic vant.
to court where he the king found.

do enphienc er wol den wîgant
then received he well the fighter

und hiez in willekomen sîn.
and bade him welcome be.

alsam tet diu künigîn
likewise did the queen

in frôlîchem muote.
in joyful spirit.

mit aller slahte guote
with of-all kinds good

enphiengen sie den helt balt.
received they the hero bold.

der keiser gap im dô gewalt
the emperor gave to-him then power

vil maniger grôzer rîcheit.
very of-many-a great richness.

er sprach ‘jungelinc gemeit,
he spoke ‘youth merry,

ez ist dir sæliclîch ergân.
it is to-thee blessedly gone.

ich wil dich zeime sune hân
I will thee as-a son have

die wîle und wir bêde leben.
the while and we both live.

ich wil dir lîhen unde geben
I will to-thee lend and give

sô vil mînes guotes,
so much of-my goods,

daz du dîns holdes muotes
that thou of-thy gracious mind

nimmer entwîchest mir.
never fall-away-from me.

ez suln immer an dir
it shall ever on thee

stên alliu mîne dinc.
stand all my things.

vil hêrlîcher jungelinc,
very lordly youth,

got hât dich mir gesant.
God has thee to-me sent.

über lîp und über lant
over body and over land

gebiut weldeclîche
command mightily

und hilf daz ich daz rîche
and help that I the realm

sô bewar und sô geslihte,
so guard and so set-straight,

daz ieman dar inne rihte
that anyone there in judge

weder roup noch den brant:
neither robbery nor the burning:

des ich dir, edele wîgant,
for-that I to-thee, noble fighter,

mit triuwen immer lônen wil.'
with faith ever reward will.'

der künic gap im alsô vil
the king gave to-him so much

beide im und sînen holden
both to-him and to-his followers

daz sie sîn niht mê wolden:
that they of-it not more would:

es dûhte sie ze vil gar.
it seemed to-them too much wholly.

dâ mite wart der helt gewar,
there with became the hero aware,

daz er in mit triuwen meinte.
that he him with faith meant.

vil dicke er im bescheinte
very often he to-him showed

vaterlîchiu dinc sint.
fatherly things are.

als ein einigez kint
as an only child

behielt er den vil hêren.
kept he the very lordly-one.

er schônde ouch sîner êren
he cared-for also his honors

beide spâte unde fruo.
both late and early.

ouch hulfen ime dar zuo
also helped him there to

sîne mâge und sîne man.
his kinsmen and his men.

ouch hiez in der künic gân
also bade him the king go

ze hove dicke an sînen rât.
to court often to his council.

dô erzougte er solhe tât
then showed he such deed

mit sprechen und mit zuhten,
with speaking and with breeding,

daz ez vernemen mohte
that it hear might

der künic und al daz rîche.
the king and all the realm.

er riet sô wîslîche,
he counseled so wisely,

daz nieman zuo der stunde
that no-one at the hour

baz gerâten kunde.
better counsel could.

ze aller hande frümekeit
to of-all kinds valor

was er ein ritter gemeit.
was he a knight merry.

III · THE COUNT PALATINE'S LIE

Otto's nephew, Count Palatine Heinrich, envies Ernst and tells the emperor that Ernst means to seize the realm. Otto at first refuses to believe it, but Heinrich persuades him to keep it from the queen and attack Ernst's castles by surprise. The imperial army ravages Bavaria and besieges Nuremberg, whose defenders drive it off with heavy losses.

Dem recken was der keiser holt:
To-the warrior was the emperor gracious:

daz hete der helt vil wol verscholt
that had the hero very well deserved

gein dem rîche und wider in.
toward the realm and toward him.

er genôz ouch der künigin,
he profited also from-the queen,

daz er ze hove stuont ze lobe.
that he at court stood in praise.

sîn name stuont in allen obe
his name stood them all above

die ze manigen jâren
who for many years

des keisers rât wâren.
the emperor's counselors were.

der künic im holden willen truoc
the king to-him gracious will bore

und tete im liebes genuoc.
and did to-him of-love enough.

daz verdiente er wol mit êren
that deserved he well with honors

umbe den künic hêren
about the king lordly

in maniger angestlîcher nôt.
in many-a anxious distress.

silber unde golt rôt
silver and gold red

gap er im dicke ungewegen.
gave he to-him often unweighed.

des wart im ouch der werde degen
of-that became to-him also the worthy thane

holt ze manigen jâren
gracious for many years

diu si bî ein ander wâren,
which they by one other were,

daz sie nie wurden gescheiden.
that they never became parted.

daz begunde leiden
that began to-vex

einem Heinrîche,
a Heinrich,

der vil mortlîche
who very murderously

die friuntschaft under in geschiet,
the friendship between them parted,

als imz der tiufel riet
as to-him-it the devil counseled

der manigen sît verrâten hât.
who many afterward betrayed has.

des keisers neve und sîn rât
the emperor's nephew and his counselor

was der selbe bœse zage.
was the same wicked coward.

er begunde denken alle tage,
he began to-think all days,

wie er den helt mære
how he the hero famous

dem keiser machte unmære,
to-the emperor should-make hateful,

daz er im wurde gehaz.
that he to-him should-become hostile.

daz tete er niwan umbe daz
that did he only for that

und durch anders keine schulde,
and for other no cause,

wan daz er des keisers hulde
except that he the emperor's favor

sô gnædeclîchen habete.
so graciously had.

do gedâhte er waz er sagete,
then thought he what he should-say,

dâ mite er imz gewande
there with he to-him-it turned

und in alsô geschande,
and him so disgraced,

daz er im von herzen wurde gram,
that he to-him from heart should-become hostile,

wan man in ze hove niht vernam
for one him at court not heard

sô wol alse dô vorn:
so well as then before:

daz was im leit unde zorn
that was to-him sorrow and anger

unde muote in und die sîne.
and grieved him and the his-own.

der phalzgrâve von dem Rîne
the count-palatine of the Rhine

hiez der ungetriuwe man,
was-called the faithless man,

von dem ich nû gesaget hân.
of whom I now told have.

Dô gienc der ungetriuwe
Then went the faithless-one

mit valsch âne riuwe
with falsehood without rue

da er des rîches herren vant
where he the realm's lord found

unde sagte im alzehant
and told to-him at-once

ein lügenlîche mære,
a lying tale,

daz im der herzoge Ernest wære
that to-him the duke Ernst were

in grôzem valsche undertân.
in great falsehood subject.

'als ich von ime vernomen hân,
'as I from him heard have,

sô wizzet wærlîche,
so know truly,

daz er iuch von dem rîche
that he you from the realm

vil gerne wil verstôzen.
very gladly will thrust.

er wil sich dir genôzen
he will himself to-thee equal

in adel und an rîcheit.
in nobility and in richness.

daz müet mich, herre, und ist mir leit.
that grieves me, lord, and is to-me sorrowful.

ez hât gemachet dîn golt.
it has made thy gold.

die fürsten sint im alle holt.
the princes are to-him all gracious.

du maht al dîn êre verliesen.
thou mayst all thy honor lose.

690 woldest du dir, herre, kiesen
wouldst thou for-thyself, lord, choose

einn getriuweren trût?
a more-faithful favorite?

jâ sprichet er daz über lût,
yes says he that over loud,

daz er an der rîcheit,
that he in the richness,

an gebürte und an edelkeit
in birth and in nobility

695 dir, herre, welle gelîchen,
to-thee, lord, will liken-himself,

und daz er tegelîchen,
and that he daily,

beide fruo und spâte,
both early and late,

dar umbe gêt ze râte,
there about goes to council,

wie er daz beginne
how he that begin

700 daz er dir ane gewinne
that he from-thee off win

dîn erbe und al dîn êre.
thy inheritance and all thy honor.

daz saget mir, fürste hêre,
that told me, prince lordly,

der ez in reden hôrte
who it him say heard

mit wærlîchen worten
with truthful words

705 der bat dô heimlîche mich
who begged then secretly me

daz ich warnete dich,
that I should-warn thee,

ê daz er über dich quæme
before that he over thee should-come

und dir dîn êre næme.
and from-thee thy honor should-take.

solt er, herre, dich vertrîben,
should he, lord, thee drive-out,

wâ möhte ich dan belîben?
where might I then remain?

sô müese ich ouch vertriben sîn.
so must I also driven be.

daz bedenke, trût herre mîn,
that consider, dear lord my,

inzît, daz wir vor im genesen.
in-time, that we from him be-saved.

solt er des rîches herre wesen,
should he the realm's lord be,

er næme ouch mir mîn êre:
he would-take also from-me my honor:

des fürhte ich harte sêre.'
of-that fear I very sorely.'

Der mære der keiser harte erschrac.
At-the tale the emperor very-much took-fright.

er sprach 'wie kan ich noch mac
he spoke 'how can I nor may

dir gelouben solher mære,
thee believe of-such tale,

daz er mir sô vînt wære
that he to-me so hostile were

als mir dîn munt hât geseit?
as to-me thy mouth has said?

ez ist durch nît ûf in geleit
it is for envy upon him laid

und durch vil ungefüegen haz.
and for very unseemly hatred.

du solt vür wâr wizzen daz
thou shalt for true know that

daz er ez durch nieman tuot.
that he it for no-one does.

er ist getriuwe unde guot,
he is faithful and good,

biderbe unde wârhaft,
upright and truthful,

und hât mit grôzer liebe kraft
and has with great love's strength

beide mir und dem rîche
both me and the realm

gedienet sô willeclîche
served so willingly

mit triuwen unz an disen tac,
with faith until to this day,

daz ich niht gelouben mac
that I not believe may

von im sô starker mære.
of him so strong tales.

er ist alles valsches lære
he is of-all falsehood empty

und aller untriuwe blôz.
and of-all faithlessness bare.

sîn triuwe ist mir dar umb ze grôz:
his faith is to-me there about too great:

ich weiz in wol sô stæte,
I know him well so steadfast,

daz er ez nimmer tæte.
that he it never would-do.

er ist ein edel wîgant
he is a noble fighter

und hât mit williger hant
and has with willing hand

mir unz her gestanden bî.
to-me until here stood by.

nû als liep ich dir sî,
now as dear I to-thee be,

lâz solhe rede belîben.
let such speech remain.

du wilt mir in vertrîben
thou wilt from-me him drive

ûz mînem dienste immer mêr.
out-of my service ever more.

daz wære mir ein herzesêr,
that were to-me a heart's-pain,

solt ich in sus verlorn hân.
should I him thus lost have.

du solt in mit gemache lân.'
thou shalt him in peace leave.'

'Owê mir vil armen,
'Alas me very poor-one,

daz müeze got erbarmen,'
that may God pity,'

sprach der phalzgrâve dô,
spoke the count-palatine then,

'daz er iuch, herre, hât alsô
'that he you, lord, has so

mit sînen listen überkomen
with his wiles overcome

und von den sinnen genomen,
and from the senses taken,

daz ir vür mich minnet in.
that you before me love him.

ich weiz wol deich iu schuldic bin
I know well that-I to-you owing am

grôzer triuwe und friuntschaft.
great faith and friendship.

ich bin ouch sô wârhaft
I am also so truthful

dem rîche und iu, herre, gewesen,
to-the realm and to-you, lord, been,

ich getriuwe als wol genesen
I trust as well to-survive

vor im als er vor mir tuot.
before him as he before me does.

ich hân ouch lant unde guot,
I have also land and goods,

ich bin ouch fürste und fürsten sun,
I am also prince and prince's son,

wan daz ich ez durch triuwe tuon
except that I it for faith do

und sus von allem rehte.
and thus from all right.

wan iuwer kraft wol mehte,
except your strength well might,

sô wolde ich lützel angest hân.
so would I little fear have.

wan solde iu, herre, missegân
for should to-you, lord, go-amiss

an lîbe und an êre,
in body and in honor,

daz überwunde ich nimmer mêre.
that would-overcome I never more.

hæte ich in hie vunden,
had I him here found,

ich hæte an disen stunden
I would-have at these hours

ûf in gezeigt den valschen rât
upon him shown the false counsel

des er ûf iuch willen hât.
of-which he against you will has.

ern mohte mirs gelouget hân.
he-not might to-me-it denied have.

ez saget mir ein sô frumer man,
it told me a so valiant man,

derz ûf sînn lîp hete geslagen,
who-it upon his life had struck,

daz er imz müese hân vertragen
that he to-him-it must have borne

des sult ir wol gewis sîn:
of-that shall you well certain be:

ez gêt mir an daz herze mîn
it goes to-me to the heart my

daz ir mir niht geloubet.
that you me not believe.

ir wizzet daz ir iuch beroubet
you know that you yourself rob

des lîbes und der êre.
of-the life and of-the honor.

nu sult ir, keiser hêre,
now shall you, emperor lordly,

dar under wîslîche varn
there among wisely fare

und iuwer êre bewarn
and your honor guard

mit wîslîchem râte.
with wise counsel.

ez wirt danne ze spâte,
it becomes then too late,

sô sie an allen sîten
when they on all sides

mit scharn ûf dich rîten:
with troops upon thee ride:

sô haben wir deheine wer.
so have we no defense.

er gewinnet ein sô kreftic her,
he wins a so mighty host,

sît im die fürsten gestênt,
since by-him the princes stand,

daz sie wol rîtent unde gênt
that they well ride and go

gên dir gewalteclîche
against thee mightily

mit brennen in dem rîche.'
with burning in the realm.'

Als der keiser daz vernam,
When the emperor that heard,

dô wart er im von herzen gram
then became he to-him from heart hostile

durch diu lügenlîchen mære.
for the lying tales.

er wânde daz ez alsô wære
he believed that it so were

als im sîn neve sagte.
as to-him his nephew told.

vil übel ez im behagte
very ill it him pleased

und wart vil trûric gemuot.
and became very sad minded.

'nu lôn dir got, helt guot,
'now reward thee God, hero good,

daz du besorgest mîne nôt.
that thou providest-for my distress.

ez enwende mir der tôt,
it unless-avert for-me the death,

er wirt dar umbe unfrô.
he becomes there about unglad.

er enhebt sich nie sô hô
he raises himself never so high

ich getrîbe ez wol wider
I drive it well back

und gesetze in alsô nider
and set him so down

daz ich vor im in mînem rîche
that I before him in my realm

wol genese fridelîche.'
well survive peacefully.'

Der künic zornen began.
The king to-rage began.

dô sprach der ungetriuwe man
then spoke the faithless man

'nu zorne niht sô sêre
'now rage not so sorely

und tuo als ich dich lêre:
and do as I thee teach:

sô mahtu mit lîhten dingen
so mayst-thou with light things

in wol ze buoze bringen
him well to penance bring

âne grôzen schaden dîn.
without great harm thy.

du solt ez heln der künigîn,
thou shalt it hide from-the queen,

und dar zuo allen dînen man,
and there to from-all thy men,

daz ich dir hie gesaget hân:
what I to-thee here told have:

sô wurde er gewarnet.
so would-become he warned.

nu schaffe daz er ez arnet
now bring-about that he it pays

ê daz ers werde innen.
before that he-of-it become aware.

man sol im ane gewinnen
one shall from-him off win

die bürge in sînen erben
the castles in his inheritance

und sol in sus verderben:
and shall him thus destroy:

ê daz er sich berihte gar
before that he himself prepares wholly

und ze wer komen tar,
and to defense come dares,

wir suln rîten ûf in mit her.
we shall ride upon him with host.

wande möhte er komen ze wer,
for (if)-might he come to defense,

er bræhtez rîche in arbeit.
he would-bring-the realm into toil.

sîne man sint ime bereit,
his men are to-him ready,

die koment im mit manigen scharn.
they come to-him with many troops.

daz mahtu allez wol bewarn
that mayst-thou all well guard-against

und âne schaden wenden.
and without harm avert.

du solt dich besenden:
thou shalt thyself summon-thy-men:

daz sol vil heimlîche ergên,
that shall very secretly go,

daz ieman müge daz verstên
that anyone may that understand

wen du wellest bestân
whom thou wilt attack

oder war diu reise welle gân,
or whither the journey will go,

unz man im den schaden tuo.
until one to-him the harm does.

dâ mac er danne niht zuo,
there may he then nothing to,

wan er keine were hât.
for he no defense has.

daz ist, herre, mîn rât.
that is, lord, my counsel.

kür sîn bürge gewinnen
take-care his castles to-win

mit triuwen und mit minnen,
with faith and with love,

daz sie dingen in dem gewalt:
that they treat in the power:

sô muoz dir der helt balt
so must to-thee the hero bold

rûmen dîn rîche
leave thy realm

âne wer flühteclîche.'
without defense fleeingly.'

Der künic volgte drâte
The king followed quickly

des phalzgrâven râte
the count-palatine's counsel

und tet nâch sîner lêre.
and did after his teaching.

daz gerou in sît vil sêre,
that rued him afterward very sorely,

wan er des harte genôz.
for he of-that very profited.

er gewan ein her, daz was grôz:
he won a host, that was great:

ûf den herzogen er dô sande.
upon the duke he then sent-it.

mit roube und mit brande
with robbery and with burning

widersagete er sînem stiefsun.
defied he his stepson.

dâ wider kunde er niht getuon
there against could he nothing do

wan daz er sîn hûs besazte.
except that he his house garrisoned.

mit schaden er in ergazte
with harm he him repaid

der liebe der er dem keiser truoc.
for-the love which he to-the emperor bore.

der phalzgrâve im genuoc
the count-palatine to-him enough

schaden in sînem lande tete
harm in his land did

beide an bürge und an stete,
both on castles and on towns,

der er im manige an gewan
of-which he from-him many off won

und besazte die mit sînen man.
and garrisoned them with his men.

daz ander man verbrennen sach.
the other one burn saw.

von grôzer lüge daz geschach.
from great lie that happened.

dô der phalzgrâve Heinrich
when the count-palatine Heinrich

den grôzen schaden umbe sich
the great harm about himself

frumte in dem lande
wrought in the land

mit roube und mit brande
with robbery and with burning

durch sînen mortlîchen haz,
for his murderous hatred,

Nüerenberc er besaz
Nuremberg he besieged

mit starker unminne.
with strong hostility.

dô vant er dar inne
then found he there in

vil manigen urliuges degen
very many-a war's thane

die beide lîp unde leben
who both body and life

harte wol werten.
very well defended.

vil manigen sie verherten
very many-a-one they laid-waste

umbe an allen sîten,
about on all sides,

in graben und an lîten,
in moats and on slopes,

die ze sturme giengen vor.
who to assault went before.

aller meist dâtz dem burctor
of-all most there-at the castle-gate

starp ir vil und genuoc.
died of-them many and enough.

der phalzgrâve selbe truoc
the count-palatine self bore

ze sturme dô des rîches vanen.
to assault then the realm's banner.

er kunde wol dar zuo gemanen
he could well there to urge

die alden und die jungen
the old and the young

dar zuo sô sêre drungen,
there to so sorely pressed,

daz sie grôzen schaden nâmen
that they great harm took

ê daz sie dannen kâmen,
before that they thence came,

wan si muosen dô entwîchen
for they must then give-way

her abe vil fürsteclîchen
here down very princely

vor der bürge ûf daz velt,
from the castle onto the field,

und brâchen abe ir gezelt.
and broke off their tents.

vil kûme se dan entrunnen
very hardly they thence escaped

und liezens ungewunnen.
and left-it unwon.

As Heinrich lays waste his land, Ernst takes Count Wetzel's advice to seek the emperor's grace first. Adelheit secretly sends word that Heinrich has slandered him and pleads with Otto, who swears to drive Ernst out; the princes' plea fares no better, and they must swear a campaign against him. Ernst holds out for years until his land is ruined.

Der phalzgrâve mit here lac
The count-palatine with host lay

dar nâch in weiz wie manigen tac
there after I-not know how many-a day

mit roube und mit brande
with robbery and with burning

in des herzogen lande,
in the duke's land,

daz im daz nieman werte.
that him that no-one warded.

daz lant er vaste herte,
the land he hard harried,

dorf hûs unde stete.
village house and towns.

dâ wider nieman entete.
there against no-one did.

der edel rîche mære
the noble rich famous-one

er wiste daz ez wære
he knew that it were

von des rîches gewalt.
from the realm's power.

dô gienc der edel recke balt
then went the noble warrior bold

mit den sînen ze râte,
with the his to council,

die besten die er hâte,
the best whom he had,

waz im nu guot wære getân.
what to-him now good were done.

dô sprach grâve Wetzel sîn man
then spoke count Wetzel his man

'tuot ir nû dâ wider iht,
'(if)-do you now there against aught,

sô muget ir iuch entreden niht,
so can you yourselves clear not,

so ir ze rehte soldet stân,
when you by right should stand,

irn hætet wider daz rîche getân,
unless-you had against the realm done,

und belibet in der schulde.
and remain in the guilt.

sus muget ir des rîches hulde
thus can you the realm's favor

verrer baz erwerben.
farther better win.

wil er iuch über daz verderben,
(if)-will he you over that destroy,

sô weiz man,' sprach der helt guot,
so knows one,' spoke the hero good,

'daz iu der keiser gwalt tuot.
'that to-you the emperor violence does.

ich enrâte iu nû deheine wer,
I counsel to-you now no defense,

wan möhtet ir hân tûsent her,
for (if)-might you have thousand hosts,

ir solt iuch wider in niht setzen.
you shall yourselves against him not set.

er mac iuch es wol ergetzen
he can you of-it well repay

swaz er iu schaden hât getân,
whatever he to-you harm has done,

wil er iuch ze rede komen lân.
(if)-will he you to speech come let.

die wîle lât ez blîben.
the while let it remain.

wil er iuch danne vertrîben,
(if)-will he you then drive-out,

sô wert iuch frümeclîche.
so defend yourselves valiantly.

ê daz ir im daz rîche
before that you to-him the realm

rûmt und iwer eigen lant,
leave and your own land,

im wirt diu arbeit erkant
to-him becomes the toil known

daz im vil wê von uns geschiht.
that to-him very woe from us happens.

wir rûmen imz sô lîhte niht:
we leave to-him-it so easily not:

wir suln uns vil wol bewarn.
we shall ourselves very well guard.

die wîle sult ir baz ervarn
the while shall you better find-out

umb mîne frowen die künigîn,
about my lady the queen,

waz disiu mære mügen sîn,
what these tidings may be,

daz man iu die ungenâde tuot:
that one to-you the disfavor does:

daz râte ich,' sprach der helt guot.
that counsel I,' spoke the hero good.

Einen boten er dô sande
A messenger he then sent
sîner muoter hin ze lande
to-his mother thither to land
und bat ir diu mære sagen
and bade to-her the tidings tell
und den grôzen schaden klagen
and the great harm lament
den man im tæte âne reht.
which one to-him did without right.
die botschaft warp ein guoter kneht
the message performed a good squire
dem er wol getriuwete dar zuo.
whom he well trusted there to.
dannen reit der helt duo:
thence rode the hero then:
mit listen und mit sinnen
with wiles and with wits
quam er zer küniginnen
came he to-the queen
und begunde ir diu mære sagen.
and began to-her the tidings to-tell.
daz muose sie leitlîche tragen
that must she sorrowfully bear
mit weinenden ougen.
with weeping eyes.
sie bat den boten tougen
she bade the messenger secretly
über naht belîben dâ.
over night remain there.
zuo dem keiser quam sie sâ
to the emperor came she at-once
dâ sie in heimlîch wiste.
where she him in-private knew.

sie sprach im zuo mit liste.
she spoke to-him to with cunning.

'ich bite dich, keiser hêre,
'I beg thee, emperor lordly,

durch dîn selbes êre
for thy own honor

und durch got den rîchen,
and for God the rich,

daz du genædeclîchen
that thou graciously

geruochest vernemen mich.
deign to-hear me.

ez hât gesant ane dich
it has sent to thee

Ernest der sune mîn
Ernst the son my

und mir geklaget den schaden sîn
and to-me lamented the harm his

und daz er âne schulde
and that he without guilt

verlorn habe dîn hulde:
lost have thy favor:

er enweiz wie er die hât verlorn,
he knows-not how he it has lost,

und daz du in durch dînen zorn
and that thou him for thy anger

sîns landes wellest enterben
of-his land wilt disinherit

und mit alle verderben
and with all destroy

âne rede und âne reht.
without speech and without right.

nu bitet dich der guote kneht
now begs thee the good knight

daz du in lâzest vür komen.
that thou him let forth come.

habe ieman iht vernomen
(if)-has anyone aught heard

von im daz er dir habe getân,
of him that he to-thee have done,

des welle er dir ze buoze stân,
for-that will he to-thee to penance stand,

als im arme und rîche
as to-him poor and rich

erteilent rehtlîche.
adjudge rightfully.

swes du von im niht wilt enbern,
whatever thou of him not wilt forgo,

des wil er gerne dich gewern,
of-that will he gladly thee grant,

ob du genâde gên im hâst
if thou grace toward him hast

und im sô lange fride lâst
and to-him so long peace lettest

unz daz er dir daz bescheine
until that he to-thee that shows

daz er dich mit triuwen meine
that he thee with faith means

und dir ie âne valschen list
and to-thee ever without false wile

mit triuwen holt gewesen ist.'
with faith devoted been is.'

Dô sprach der künic rîche
Then spoke the king rich

in grimme zorneclîche
in grimness wrathfully

und in vil starken unsiten
and in very strong ill-manners

‘dar umbe ensult ir mich niht biten, 1000
‘there about shall you me not beg,

wan ich enmac es niht getuon.
for I can of-it not do.

frouwe, ez hât mich iuwer sun
lady, it has me your son

gelestert alsô sêre,
reviled so sorely,

daz er darf nimmer mêre
that he need never more

komen dâ ich müge gesîn, 1005
come where I may be,

des sol er gewis sîn.
of-that shall he certain be.

ezn sî daz mirs lîbes zerinne,
unless-it be that to-me-of-it life runs-out,

ich bringe in vil wol inne
I bring him very well aware

daz er mir leides hât getân.
that he to-me of-sorrow has done.

daz sult ir wizzen âne wân: 1010
that shall you know without doubt:

ich erleide im daz lant.
I make-hateful to-him the land.

einen strengen vîant
a stern enemy

hât er an mir die wîle ich leben:
has he in me the while I live:

des wil ich iu mîn triuwe geben.'
of-that will I to-you my faith give.'

Dô diu frouwe vil guot
When the lady very good

disen grimmigen muot
this grim mind

an dem künige vernam,
in the king heard,

dâ von sie grôzlîche erkam:
there from she greatly took-fright:

si getorste in dô niht mêr gebiten.
she dared him then not more beg.

mit vil wîplîchen siten
with very womanly manners

gienc sie dô dannen drâte
went she then thence quickly

hin zir kemenâte.
thither to-her chamber.

den boten sie dô sande
the messenger she then sent

balde wider ze lande
quickly back to land

und enbôt ir sun dem herzogen,
and sent-word to-her son the duke,

in hete der phalzgrâve verlogen
him had the count-palatine lied-about

wider den künec grôzlîche,
toward the king greatly,

daz im wærlîche
that to-him truly

nieman kunde gewegen,
no-one could weigh-against,

‘daz er tuo als ein degen
‘that he do as a thane

und sîn lant alsô bewar,
and his land so guard,

swie halt sîn dinc gevar,
however indeed his thing fares,

daz er behüete sîn êre.
that he guard his honor.

der keiser zornet sêre
the emperor rages sorely

und giht des offenlîche,
and says of-that openly,

ern rûme im daz rîche,
unless-he leave to-him the realm,

daz er in des lîbes ergetze
that he him of-the life deprive

und vil gar entsetze
and very wholly dispossess

aller sîner êren.’
of-all his honors.’

daz enbôt sie dem hêren.
that sent-word she to-the lordly-one.

Do er daz vernomen habete,
When he that heard had,

der bote wider drabete,
the messenger back trotted,

sô er baldest kunde,
as he quickest could,

und kam in kurzer stunde
and came in short while

ze Beieren in daz lant,
to Bavaria into the land,

dâ er sînen herren vant
where he his lord found

ûf einer sîner veste.
on a his fortress.

der frâgte in ob er weste
he asked him whether he knew

war umb im der keiser mære
what for to-him the emperor famous

sô starke vîent wære,
so strongly hostile were,

waz er ime habe getân.
what he to-him have done.

des antwurte im der küene man
for-that answered him the bold man

'des bringe ich dich wol inne:
'of-that bring I thee well aware:

dir enbiutet holde minne
to-thee sends fond love

diu künigîn dîn muoter,
the queen thy mother,

und daz du, helt vil guoter,
and that thou, hero very good,

schaffest dîne warheit.
make thy guard.

dir ist ein michel arbeit
to-thee is a great toil

ûf erstanden âne schulde.
up risen without guilt.

dir hât des keisers hulde
from-thee has the emperor's favor

der phalzgrâve heimlîch erwant.
the count-palatine secretly turned.

nu gedenke, biderbe wîgant,
now think, upright fighter,

wie ez im ze leide werde.
how it to-him to sorrow become.

dich wil der vil unwerde
thee will the very unworthy-one

von dînem erbe vertrîben.
from thy inheritance drive.

læstu ez alsô blîben,
(if)-lettest-thou it so remain,

daz ist iemêr ir herzeleit.
that is ever her heart's-sorrow.

mîn frouwe hât mir geseit,
my lady has to-me said,

sie habe daz wærlîch vernomen,
she have that truly heard,

dir mac nieman ze helfe komen:
to-thee may no-one to help come:

er welle dir starke vîent sîn.
he will to-thee strong enemy be.

nu lâz, helt, wesen schîn
now let, hero, be visible

daz du ie wære ein guot kneht.
that thou ever wert a good knight.

dir tuot der keiser unreht:
to-thee does the emperor wrong:

dir hilfet got deste baz.
thee helps God the better.

nu schaffe mit ime daz,
now bring-about with him that,

swenn er dich vertriben habe,
when he thee driven-out have,

daz man immer von dir sage,
that one ever of thee tell,

wie dîn erbe nâch dir bleip,
how thy inheritance after thee remained,

daz dich der keiser dâ von treip.
that thee the emperor there from drove.

Doch râte ich imz niht umbe daz:
Yet counsel I to-him-it not about that:

er sol ez noch versuochen baz,
he shall it still try better,

tuo ez den fürsten bekant
make it to-the princes known

nâch den der keiser hât gesant.
after whom the emperor has sent.

er wil ein sprâche mit in hân.
he will a parley with them have.

daz ist wæn ich ûf in getân.
that is believe I against him done.

man sie mit friuntlîchen siten,
urge them with friendly manners,

daz sie den keiser umb in biten.
that they the emperor about him beg.

swie man dort von im geseit,
however one there of him says,

daz wirt im schiere bereit:
that becomes to-him soon ready:

dar nâch rihte sich dan.'
there after direct himself then.'

daz enbôt sie dem werden man.
that sent-word she to-the worthy man.

Einen boten er dô sande
A messenger he then sent

der balde dâ hin rande
who quickly there thither ran

da er die fürsten alle sach.
where he the princes all saw.

in einer naht daz geschach.
in one night that happened.

do in der bote sagete
when to-them the messenger told

und al die nôt geklagete
and all the distress lamented

die in sîn herre dar enbôt,
which to-them his lord there sent-word,

do erbarmte sie diu starke nôt
then moved-to-pity them the strong distress

die er âne schulde hâte erliten.
which he without guilt had suffered.

sie jâhn sie wolden umb in biten
they said they would about him beg

und gerne sprechen dar zuo.
and gladly speak there to.

des andern morgens vil fruo,
of-the other morning very early,

dô sie hâten messe vernomen
when they had mass heard

und ze hove wâren komen,
and to court were come,

vür den keiser sie giengen.
before the emperor they went.

ir bete sie an viengen,
their request they on began,

daz se im vielen zuo den füezen.
that they to-him fell to the feet.

‘obe wir iuch biten müezen,
‘if we you beg must,

so erloubt uns, herre, mit guoten siten
so allow us, lord, with good manners

ein bete der wir iuch wellen biten
a request which we you will beg

und daz ez sî âne zorn.’
and that it be without anger.’

dô sprach der fürste wol geborn
then spoke the prince well born

‘stêt ûf unde sît gewert,
‘stand up and be granted,

ob ir betelîche gert.
if you fittingly desire.

lât hœren waz der bete sî.’
let hear what the request be.’

dô sprach ein fürste dâ bî
then spoke a prince there by

‘sô biten wir, edel keiser guot,
‘so beg we, noble emperor good,

daz ir senftet iuwern muot
that you soften your mind

benamen durch got den rîchen,
assuredly for God the rich,

sô daz ir gnædeclîchen
so that you graciously

tuot an dem herzogen
do toward the duke

der sêre wider iuch ist belogen,
who sorely toward you is lied-about,

daz er âne schulde
that he without guilt

mangelt iuwerr hulde,
lacks your favor,

die hât er vlorn ern weiz wie.
which has he lost he knows-not how.

des bitent iuch die fürsten hie,
for-that beg you the princes here,

sît er genâde suochet,
since he grace seeks,

daz ouch ir des geruochet
that also you of-that deign

und in genædeclîch bestât.
and him graciously stand-by.

swaz er wider iuch getân hât,
whatever he against you done has,

daz wellen wir im helfen büezen,
that will we him help atone,

unz wir iwern unmuot wol gesüezen
until we your ill-mood well sweeten

und iwern zorn gestillen,
and your anger still,

gar nâch iwerm willen
wholly after your will

iwer herzeleit verkêren
your heart's-sorrow turn

wol nâch des rîches êren,
well after the realm's honor,

nâch urteil und iur selbes kür.
after judgment and your own choice.

nu lât in, herre, komen vür:
now let him, lord, come forth:

swaz er wider iuch hât getân,
whatever he against you has done,

des lât in ze buoze stân
of-that let him to penance stand

niwan swie ir selbe welt:
only as you self will:

daz wir dienstlîch sîn verselt
that we in-service be given
gên iu immer mêre;
toward you ever more;
sô lât in, fürste hêre,
so let him, prince lordly,
ân schulde sô niht verderben.
without guilt so not perish.
er wil umbe hulde werben
he will for favor sue
in getriuwelîchem muote.
in faithful mind.
mit lîbe und mit guote
with body and with goods
wil er sich an iwer gnâde lân.
will he himself to your grace leave.
lât in die wîle fride hân,
let him the while peace have,
unz wir in für iuch bringen
until we him before you bring
ze rehten teidingen.
to right parley.
swes ir von im niht welt entwesen,
whatever you of him not will do-without,
des welle wir vür in bürge wesen,
for-that will we for him surety be,
unz iu sîn unschult werde erkant.'
until to-you his innocence become known.'
dô sprach der künic alzehant
then spoke the king at-once
in zorne unsiteclîche
in anger ill-manneredly
'ir bitet unbetelîche.
'you beg unfittingly.

ich hân ez sô sêre versworn
I have it so sorely forsworn

daz nimmer von mir wirt verkorn.
that never by me becomes forgiven.

fride noch suone er nimmer gwinnet.
peace nor reconciliation he never wins.

swer mich und daz rîche minnet,
whoever me and the realm loves,

der sol mich dirre bete erlân,
he shall me this request spare,

welle er mich ze friunde hân.
(if)-will he me as friend have.

wand er wil mich verstôzen
for he will me thrust-out

und wil sich mir genôzen
and will himself to-me equal

an edele und an frümekeit.
in nobility and in valor.

sol ich leben, ez wirt im leit.
(if)-shall I live, it becomes to-him grievous.

ich vertrîbe in oder er mich:
I drive-out him or he me:

des sol er wol versehen sich.
of-that shall he well expect himself.

swelch fürste in des vertrôst hât
whichever prince him of-that assured has

daz er im wider mich gestât,
that he to-him against me stands,

des vîent wil ich immer sîn:
whose enemy will I ever be:

daz habet ûf die triuwe mîn.'
that have upon the faith my.'

Die fürsten ûf hôher muosen stân
The princes up higher must stand
und die bete durch vorhte lân.
and the request for fear leave.
swie liep in der fürste mære
however dear to-them the prince famous
dâ vor gewesen wære,
there before been were,
und die im gerne wârn gestanden,
and who to-him gladly were stood,
mit ûf gerahten handen
with up raised hands
die muosen hervart ûf in swern:
they must campaign upon him swear:
des torsten sie sich niht gewern,
of-that dared they themselves not refuse,
sie muosen im alle widersagen.
they must to-him all defiance-send.
sîne mâge muosen gên im tragen
his kinsmen must against him bear
wâfen, daz er inz gebôt.
weapons, that he to-them-it commanded.
des wart harte grôz diu nôt
of-that became very great the distress
in allen tiutschen rîchen,
in all German realms,
wan er sich manlîchen
for he himself manfully
sehs jâr des rîches werte,
six years against-the realm defended,
unz man in sô gar verherte:
until one him so wholly harried:
dô muose er sich lân vertrîben,
then must he himself let drive-out,

wan er mohte niht belîben
for he might not remain

von des rîches krefte
before the realm's force

und von ander vîentschefte.
and before other enmity.

V · SPEYER

Ernst rides secretly to the court at Speyer with two men, Wetzel and one who guards the horses, bursts with Wetzel into the chamber where Otto sits in council with Heinrich, and beheads the count palatine while the emperor escapes into a chapel. The three escape across the Rhine by night. Otto swears vengeance, outlaws Ernst, and besieges Regensburg, where the burghers fight fiercely.

Dô der bote wider kam
When the messenger back came

und er diu hovemære vernam,
and he the court-tidings heard,

dô sprach der dietdegen
then spoke the people's-thane

'nu müeze unser got phlegen
'now may our God take-care

in sîner diemüete
in his humility

und reche mich durch sîn güete
and avenge me through his goodness

an dem vil ungetriuwen man,
on the very faithless man,

von dem ich disen schaden hân
from whom I this harm have

und dise grôze arbeit,
and this great toil,

wande nie dehein leit
for never any sorrow

von mir geschach dem rîche.
from me happened to-the realm.

ich sage iu wærlîche,
I tell to-you truly,

er arnet den mortlîchen rât
he pays-for the murderous counsel

dâ mit er mir enwendet hât
there with he from-me turned has

mînn vil lieben hêren,
my very dear lord,

dem ich sîner êren
to-whom I of-his honors

mit triuwen ie wol gunde.
with faith ever well granted.

unz an dise stunde
until to this hour

was mir ie sîn schade leit,'
was to-me ever his harm grievous,'

sprach der ritter gemeit.
spoke the knight merry.

'nu muoz ich werben sînen schaden.
'now must I work his harm.

mohte ich mich des wol entladen
(if)-might I myself of-that well clear

gein im mit den êren mîn,
toward him with the honors my,

des wolde ich immer frô sîn.
of-that would I ever glad be.

des weiz got wol die wârheit
of-that knows God well the truth

daz ich mit keiner tumpheit
that I with no folly

sîne hulde hân verlorn.
his favor have lost.

nu bewart er sînen zorn
now keeps he his anger

vil ungenædeclîche.
very ungraciously.

ich wil noch in sîm rîche
I will still in his realm

ein wîle mit im bûwen.
a while with him dwell.

des sol er mir getrûwen.
of-that shall he me trust.

ez sî im liep oder leit,
it be to-him dear or grievous,

daz sî im vür wâr geseit,
that be to-him for true told,

mich entwinge noch grœzer nôt,
me unless-compel still greater distress,

siechtuom armuot oder der tôt,
sickness poverty or the death,

als ez noch vil manigen tuot,
as it still very many does,

ich hân sô manigen helt guot
I have so many-a hero good

der mich niht vertrîben lât
who me not drive-out lets

die wîle und er den lîp hât,
the while and he the life has,

daz ich im wol mac widerstân.
that I to-him well may withstand.

ez wirt alsô niht getân
it becomes so not done

daz er mir neme mîn lant
that he from-me take my land

daz mich,' sprach der wîgant,
which me,' spoke the fighter,

'von art an geerbet is:
'from birth on inherited is:

er hât ez noch vil ungewis.'
he has it still very uncertain.'

Der keiser hâte einn hof geleit
The emperor had a court laid

ze Spîre. do im daz was geseit,
at Speyer. when to-him that was told,

dô dâhter 'benamen, ich muoz dar,
then thought-he 'assuredly, I must thither,

swie ich halt dar umbe gevar.
however I indeed there about fare.

ich muoz komen über Rîn
I must come over Rhine

zuo den vîenden mîn
to the enemies my

die mir daz leit habent getân.'
who to-me the sorrow have done.'

do erwelte er zwêne sîne man
then chose he two his men

der ellen er bekande,
whose valor he knew,

mit den er dâ hin rande.
with whom he there thither ran.

dô sie kâmen über Rîn,
when they came over Rhine,

dô sagete er den gesellen sîn
then told he to-the companions his

beide willen unde muot.
both will and mind.

dô dûhte sie der rât guot
then seemed to-them the counsel good

den er erfunden hâte.
which he devised had.

ez was harte spâte,
it was very late,

do er ûf den hof geriten kam.
when he onto the court ridden came.

den grâven Wetzel er zuo im nam
the count Wetzel he to himself took

und bat den andern sînen degen
and bade the other his thane

der ros mit guoter huote phlegen
of-the horses with good watch take-care

und des mit flîze nemen war
and of-that with diligence take heed

daz er wære bereit und gar,
that he were ready and prepared,

ob ir wille ergienge,
if their will came-about,

ê daz man sie gevienge,
before that one them caught,

daz sie dan riten âne danc.
that they thence rode without thanks.

der herzoge balde hin spranc
the duke quickly thither sprang

in zorne für des rîches tür.
in anger before the realm's door.

dâ stuonden kameræ̈re vür
there stood chamberlains before

und heten ez übele bewart.
and had it badly guarded.

die tür fundens ungespart,
the door found-they unbarred,

der herzoge und sîn man.
the duke and his man.

ob sie gewünschet solden hân,
if they wished should have,

ez hete sich niht gefüeget baz.
it had itself not arranged better.

der künic mit sînem neven saz
the king with his nephew sat

heimlîch an eime râte.
secretly at a council.

in die kemenâte
into the chamber

kâmen dise recken wert.
came these warriors worthy.

vil balde zucten sie diu swert
very quickly drew they the swords

und zestôrten dar inne
and broke-up there in

daz gespræche mit unminne.
the conversation with hostility.

der künic entran vil kûme.
the king escaped very hardly.

er spranc von sînem rûme
he sprang from his room

vil snelle über eine banc.
very swiftly over a bench.

in dûht diu wîle gar ze lanc.
him seemed the while wholly too long.

in ein kappellen er entran.
into a chapel he escaped.

der phalzgrâve sîn man
the count-palatine his man

wart des râtes vil unfrô.
became of-the council very unglad.

der herzoge sluoc im dô
the duke struck to-him then

einen alsô swinden slac
a so swift blow

daz er vil smæhelîche lac.
that he very shamefully lay.

daz houbet verre von im spranc.
the head far from him sprang.

er sprach 'der keiser habe undanc
he spoke 'the emperor have no-thanks

daz er ie gevolgte dir.
that he ever followed thee.

nâch im stuont mîns herzen gir,
after him stood my heart's desire,

der mir sus enpharn is:
who from-me thus escaped is:

er hæte von mir gewis
he would-have from me certainly

enphangen den grimmen tôt.
received the grim death.

er hât gedienet wol die nôt
he has deserved well the distress

daz er ie gevolgte dir.
that he ever followed thee.

waz maht du vâlant an mir?
what mayst thou devil against me?

daz dir got gebe leit!
that to-thee God give sorrow!

ich begienc nie kein archeit
I committed never any malice

an dir noch an keinem man.
against thee nor against any man.

des solde ich wol genozzen hân
of-that should I well profited have

wider dich und wider daz rîche.
toward thee and toward the realm.

nu ligestu hie jæmerlîche
now liest-thou here lamentably

mit bluote berunnen.
with blood run-over.

daz hâstu dran gewunnen.
that hast-thou thereby won.

du tæte mirz ân alle nôt.
thou didst to-me-it without all need.

ez geliget vil maniger tôt
there lies very many dead

durch dînen ungetriuwen rât.
for thy faithless counsel.

der aller dinge gewalt hât,
who of-all things power has,

der ruoche dîner sêle phlegen.'
he deign of-thy soul to-take-care.'

zuo den rossen gienc der degen.
to the horses went the thane.

dannoch was dâ nieman bî.
still was there no-one by.

ûf sâzen sie dô alle drî
up sat they then all three

und riten dan mit gewalt,
and rode thence with force,

sô daz mit den recken balt
so that with the warriors bold

nieman streit noch envaht.
no-one strove nor fought.

dô half in diu vinster naht
then helped them the dark night

daz sie wol kâmen über Rîn.
that they well came over Rhine.

sît tet der herzoge schîn
afterward made the duke visible

wer mit ellenthafter hant,
who-he-was with valiant hand,

ê daz er gerûmte sîn lant.
before that he left his land.

In der bürge über al
In the castle over all

huop sich vil grôzer schal,
rose itself very great clamor,

dô man diu mære bevant
when one the tidings learned

daz Ernest der wîgant
that Ernst the fighter

den phalzgrâven hæte erslagen.
the count-palatine had slain.

beide weinen unde klagen
both weeping and lamenting

wart dô harte vernomen.
became then very-much heard.

daz er alsô hin was komen,
that he so away was come,

daz dûhte jene ein wunder grôz.
that seemed to-those a wonder great.

der ludem allenthalben dôz.
the din everywhere sounded.

dar zuo ûf allen wegen
there to on all ways

die tiwerlîchen degen
the precious thanes

ersuochten daz gevilde
searched the field

mit speren und mit schilde,
with spears and with shield,

verren unde wîten,
far and wide,

daz sie ir niht errîten
that they them not overtake

mohten noch enkunden.
might nor could.

dô sie ir niht gevunden,
when they them not found,

in die stat sie wider riten:
into the city they back rode:

mit vil jâmerlîchen siten
with very lamentable manners

si begunden harte sêre klagen
they began very sorely to-lament

daz sie niht mêre mohten jagen.
that they not more might hunt.

swie vil dô jâmers wart vernomen,
however much then of-grief became heard,

dise wârn an ir gewarheit komen.
these were at their safety come.

Dô sich der herzoge sus gerach
When himself the duke thus avenged

und der künic daz gesach
and the king that saw

daz sîn neve tôt was
that his nephew dead was

und der herzoge genas
and the duke survived

und mit gewalt enwec reit,
and with force away rode,

daz was im ein herzeleit.
that was to-him a heart's-sorrow.

'im sol immer widersaget sîn
'to-him shall ever defiance-sent be

durch dich, vil werde helt mîn.
for thee, very worthy hero my.

er hât mir daz herze guot
he has to-me the heart good

betrüebet mit unmuot.
saddened with ill-mood.

du riuwest mich sêre!
thou ruest me sorely!

ich enwil ouch nimmer mêre
I will also never more

in mîme herzen werden frô,
in my heart become glad,

ich enreche dich alsô
I unless-avenge thee so

daz man immer dâ von sagen mac.
that one ever there of tell may.

gelebe ich morgen den tac,
(if)-live I tomorrow the day,

mir entwîchen alle die ich hân,
from-me escape all whom I have,

mîne mâge und mîne man
my kinsmen and my men

und ander die friunde mîn,
and other the friends my,

ich sol vil schiere bî im sîn
I shall very soon by him be

dâ heime in sînem lande.
there at-home in his land.

daz leit und disiu schande
the sorrow and this shame

müeze gote geklaget sîn.
may to-God lamented be.

nu man ich al die friunde mîn
now urge I all the friends my

daz siez in lâzen wesen leit
that they-it to-them let be grievous

daz er ie her ze hove reit
that he ever hither to court rode

ûf sô grôze unêre.
upon so great dishonor.

daz sol mich riuwen immer mêre
that shall me rue ever more

die wîl ich den lîp hân,
the while I the life have,

daz er ie getorste begân
that he ever dared commit

diz laster an dem mâge mîn.
this disgrace on the kinsman my.

er sol des gewis sîn,
he shall of-that certain be,

ez gestêt im niht vergebene.
it stands to-him not in-vain.

bî niemannes lebene
in no-one's lifetime

geschach ez keinem künige ê.
happened it to-any king before.

mir tuot daz laster immer wê
to-me does the disgrace ever woe

daz mir bî allen mînen man
that to-me by all my men

sô frevelîch hie ist getân.'
so outrageously here is done.'

Sus was der keiser unfrô.
Thus was the emperor unglad.

den lîchamen hiez er dô
the corpse bade he then

schône ûf eine bâre legen.
beautifully upon a bier lay.

die naht hiez er obe dem degen
the night bade he over the thane

wachen, als wir noch site haben.
wake, as we still custom have.

des morgens wart er begraben
in-the morning became he buried

mit vil grôzen êren.
with very great honors.

dar nâch hiez er die hêren
there after bade he the lords

alle hin ze hove laden.
all thither to court summon.

dô klagete er den grôzen schaden
then lamented he the great harm

beide armen unde rîchen,
both to-poor and rich,

daz in sô lasterlîchen
that him so shamefully

Ernest der herzoge
Ernst the duke

hæte gesuochet dâ ze hove
had sought there at court

und der grâve Wetzel sîn man,
and the count Wetzel his man,

daz sie im hæten getân
that they to-him had done

sô grôz laster unde schaden,
so great disgrace and harm,

des er sich nimmer kunde entladen
of-which he himself never could clear

die wîle und er mohte leben:
the while and he might live:

er kunde im nimmer mêr vergeben
he could to-him never more forgive

die schulde umb sînes neven tôt.
the guilt for his nephew's death.

noch wære diz ein grœzer nôt,
still were this a greater distress,

sie heten im nâch den lîp benomen:
they had from-him nearly the life taken:

wær er niht in ein kappellen komen,
(if)-were he not into a chapel come,

sô hæte er den lîp verlorn.
so would-have he the life lost.

'helde, lât iu wesen zorn
'heroes, let to-you be anger

daz er iuch und daz rîche
that he you and the realm

sô rehte lasterlîche
so truly shamefully

bediu alle hât geschant.'
both all has disgraced.'

dô verteilten si im zehant,
then judged-away they from-him at-once,

dô sie in muosen vêhen,
since they him must feud,

beide eigen unde lêhen,
both property and fief,

dar zuo gar sîn erbe.
there to wholly his inheritance.

'swie man in verderbe,
'however one him destroy,

des habet ir, herre, michel reht,'
of-that have you, lord, great right,'

sprach dâ vil manic kneht.
spoke there very many-a knight.

'er hât verdienet wol die nôt.'
'he has deserved well the distress.'

der keiser über in gebôt
the emperor over him commanded

sîn âhte und über die sîne.
his ban and over the his.

ê daz man in von Rîne
before that one him from Rhine

von dem hove scheiden sach,
from the court part saw,

ein hervart der fürste sprach
a campaign the prince proclaimed

in des herzogen lant.
into the duke's land.

diu wart geboten zehant
it became commanded at-once

den die ze werke tohten
to-those who for work availed

und schilt getragen mohten,
and shield carry might,

er wære junc oder alt.
he were young or old.

vil manigen helt balt
very many-a hero bold

gwan er ze tiutschem lande,
won he in German land,

der guoten wîgande
of-the good fighters

drîzic tûsent unde mêr.
thirty thousand and more.

ouch fuoren dô die fürsten hêr
also fared then the princes lordly

mit vil guoten knehten
with very good knights

die wol getorsten vehten
who well dared fight

und ze flîze wâren gar.
and to diligence were wholly.

dô hiez er wîsen die schar
then bade he guide the troop

mit sînem vanen an der hant
with his banner at the hand

ze Beiern in des fürsten lant
to Bavaria into the prince's land

durch des herzogen haz.
for the duke's hatred.

Regensburc er besaz
Regensburg he besieged

und lac dâ vor mit gewalt.
and lay there before with force.

des vil manic helt balt
of-that very many-a hero bold

den tôt muost dô kiesen
the death must then choose

und sînen lîp verliesen.
and his life lose.

Des keisers van wart getragen
The emperor's banner became carried

dar zuo mit kreftigen magen,
there to with mighty strength,

als man noch ze sturme tuot.
as one still to assault does.

sich garte manic helt guot
himself girded many-a hero good

in die liehten ringe.
in the bright rings.

die stolzen jungelinge
the proud youths

die stat al umbe viengen.
the city all about seized.

mit gewalt sie dô giengen
with force they then went

allenthalben an die mûre.
on-all-sides to the wall.

ritter und gebûre
knights and peasants

beleip dâ vil zen stunden.
remained there many at-the hours.

des herzogen man hâten an gebunden
the duke's men had on bound

einen vanen grüenen.
a banner green.

dô huoben sich die küenen
then raised themselves the bold-ones

mit scharn vür daz burctor.
with troops before the castle-gate.

aldâ bestuonden sie vor
there withstood they before

den künic unde sîne man.
the king and his men.

schaden wart dâ vil getân,
harm became there much done,

dô sie die geste enphiengen.
when they the guests received.

zesamene sie dô giengen
together they then went

und huoben einen sturm hart.
and raised an assault hard.

dâ wurden liehte helme schart.
there became bright helms notched.

vil manic swert dar ûf erklanc,
very many-a sword there upon rang,

dâ schar wider schar dranc.
where troop against troop pressed.

manec helt wart dâ verhouwen
many-a hero became there hewn

mit bluote bestrouwen.
with blood bestrewn.

dâ wart manic solt gegeben.
there became many-a pay given.

da verkouften helde daz leben
there sold heroes the life

durch ruom in dem strîte.
for fame in the strife.

dâ wurden wunden wîte
there became wounds wide

geslagen durch liehte ringe.
struck through bright rings.

die stolzen jungelinge
the proud youths

vil lützel sies genuzzen.
very little they-of-it profited.

sie sluogen unde schuzzen
they struck and shot

mit spern und mit gêren.
with spears and with javelins.

da begunnen manigen sêren
there began many to-wound

die burger und die geste.
the burghers and the guests.

die kalten mitereste
the cold last-meal

kôs dâ vil manic küene man
chose there very many-a bold man

den man tôten truoc von dan.
whom one dead carried from thence.

After months of siege and assault, Ernst tells Regensburg to surrender rather than lose a single man, and Otto grants the defenders their lives. The emperor lays waste Ernst's land, while Ernst wages war on him for more than five years, until he has spent everything. He then gathers his fifty most steadfast men and tells them that whoever swims against the current goes under at last, and so does whoever wars long against the realm; better to take the cross than be driven out.

Der sturm werte unz an die naht.
The assault lasted until to the night.

mit vil ellenthafter maht
with very valiant might

wart beidenthalp gevohten,
became on-both-sides fought,

wan sie sich nie enmohten
for they themselves never could

gescheiden von des keisers diet,
part from the emperor's folk,

unz sie diu vinster naht geschiet.
until them the dark night parted.

die burger fuoren in die stat.
the burghers fared into the city.

die geste man sich legen bat
the guests one themselves lie bade

allenthalben ûf daz velt.
everywhere upon the field.

beide hütten und gezelt
both huts and tents

was dâ manigez ûf geslagen.
was there many up pitched.

die tôten wurden dan getragen,
the dead became thence carried,

geleget ûf die bâren,
laid upon the biers,

die dâ beliben wâren
who there remained were

tôt mit ellenthafter wer.
dead with valiant defense.

die innern heten daz ûzer her
the inner-ones had the outer host

mit solhem jâmer überladen
with such grief overloaded

daz der keiser den schaden
that the emperor the harm

klagen sêre sît began.
to-lament sorely afterward began.

er hâte mêr dan tûsent man
he had more than thousand men

in dem sturme verlorn.
in the assault lost.

daz was im leit unde zorn
that was to-him sorrow and anger

und muote in harte sêre.
and grieved him very sorely.

er verlôs ir sider mêre
he lost of-them afterward more

die niht genesen kunden
who not survive could

von den starken wunden
from the strong wounds

vil jâmerlîch ersturben,
very lamentably died,

die si in dem wal erwurben.
which they in the battlefield won.

Die burger hâten ouch genomen
The burghers had also taken

schaden, als ich hân vernomen,
harm, as I have heard,

an tôten und an wunden,
in dead and in wounded,

den sie müelîch überwunden:
which they toilsomely overcame:

die muosen sie dô varn lân,
them must they then fare let,

als man dicke hât getân
as one often has done

dâ man urliuges phlac.
where one war practiced.

der keiser dô die stat belac
the emperor then the city besieged

gewalteclîch mit sîme her.
mightily with his host.

die burger machten ir rincwer
the burghers made their ring-defense

ûf türnen und ûf zinnen.
upon towers and upon battlements.

sie brâhten in wol innen
they brought him well aware

daz sie im wolden widerstân.
that they to-him would withstand.

dô hiez man ze sturme gân
then bade one to assault go

daz volc gemeinlîche,
the folk in-common,

beide arme und rîche,
both poor and rich,

ritter und gebûre.
knights and peasants.

vaste unz an die mûre
hard until to the wall

si an allen enden giengen.
they on all ends went.

dâ von die geste enphiengen
there from the guests received

einen schaden ungefuoge grôz.
a harm monstrously great.

von den türnen man sie schôz
from the towers one them shot

mit geschôze, daz was scharf.
with missiles, that was sharp.

von den zinnen man sie warf
from the battlements one them threw

mit steinen ûz den erkêren.
with stones out-of the oriels.

vil manigen verhsêren
very many-a mortally-wounded-one

sach man vallen in den graben,
saw one fall into the moat,

der des sturmes muose haben
who of-the assault must have

genuoc unz an sînen tôt.
enough until to his death.

man sach dâ von bluote rôt
one saw there from blood red

vil der liehten ringe.
many of-the bright rings.

die stolzen jungelinge
the proud youths

den tôt dô vaste holden,
the death then hard fetched,

die ruom erwerben wolden.
who fame win would.

Der keiser zornes sich verwac,
The emperor of-anger himself resolved,

daz er vür der stat lac
that he before the city lay

sehs mânet unde mê.
six months and more.

doch tete im âne mâze wê
yet did to-him beyond measure woe

daz er sô vil het verlorn.
that he so much had lost.

er hæte gerne sînen zorn
he would-have gladly his anger

gerochen an der grôzen stat.
avenged on the great city.

vil balde er dô würken bat
very quickly he then make bade

igel katzen berchfrît
hedgehogs cats towers

ûf solhen langen strît
for such long strife

hiez er dar zuo gerehten.
bade he there to prepare.

do er sie niht mohte ervehten,
when he them not might fight-down,

daz sie niht wolden dingen,
that they not would treat,

mit küenen jungelingen
with bold youths

treip er sie vaste unz an den graben.
drove he them hard until to the moat.

dô wart zuo der bürge erhaben
then became to the castle raised

ein sturm mit unminnen.
an assault with hostility.

dô trâten an die zinnen
then stepped to the battlements

die küenen burgære.
the bold burghers.

swie vil ir hers wære
however much their host were

dar brâht von fremden landen,
there brought from foreign lands,

mit ellenthaften handen
with valiant hands

sô werten si ir mûre.
so defended they their wall.

der strît wart in ze sûre.
the strife became to-them too sour.

sie vielen dicke als der snê.
they fell thick as the snow.

sie riefen ach und owê
they cried ah and alas

die niht langer mohten stên.
who not longer might stand.

dô hiez vaste dar gên
then bade hard thither go

der künic allez sîn her.
the king all his host.

do zewurfen sie die brustwer
then broke-apart they the breastwork

vil vaste mit den mangen.
very hard with the mangonels.

swaz sie ir mohten erlangen,
whatever they of-them might reach,

vil lützel man die sparte.
very little one them spared.

sie nôten sie sô harte
they pressed them so hard

mit schôze von den berchfriden.
with shot from the towers.

die burger woldenz gerne friden,
the burghers would-it gladly make-peace,

wan sie diu antwerc vorhten
for they the engines feared

diu die geste gên in worhten.
which the guests against them wrought.

vil manic helt dâ tôt gelac.
very many-a hero there dead lay.

der sturm werte al den tac
the assault lasted all the day

mit vil ellenthafter maht
with very valiant might

von fruo morgen unz an die naht,
from early morning until to the night,

daz sie nie âne strît beleip,
that it never without strife remained,

unz sie diu vinster naht vertreip.
until them the dark night drove-off.

Diu stat die naht alsô genas.
The city the night so survived.

dâ der herzoge Ernest was,
where the duke Ernst was,

verholn ein bote wart gesant
secretly a messenger became sent

der im diu mære tet bekant,
who to-him the tidings made known,

wie sie sich solden nu genern.
how they themselves should now save.

sie möhten die stat niht erwern,
they might the city not defend,

sie müesen drinne ligen tôt.
they must therein lie dead.

sie hæten sich mit grôzer nôt
they had themselves with great distress

unz her dar inne enthalden.
until hither there in held.

sie möhten ir behalden
they might it keep

mit keiner wîs nu vürbaz mêr.
in no way now further more.

do enbôt in der fürste hêr
then sent-word to-them the prince lordly

daz er die stat ê verkür,
that he the city rather would-give-up,

ê er ir einen drûz verlür.
than he of-them one therefrom should-lose.

'swâ halt ich belîbe,
'wherever indeed I remain,

heiz sie mit dem lîbe
bid them with the life

ûz der burc dingen
out-of the castle treat

und des keisers zorn ringen,
and the emperor's anger lighten,

der mir ist sô starke gram.'
who to-me is so strongly hostile.'

der bote balde wider kam,
the messenger quickly back came,

diu mære er in dô sagete.
the tidings he to-them then told.

des morgens dô ez tagete,
in-the morning when it dawned,

dem keiser kâmen mære
to-the emperor came tidings

daz im die burgære
that to-him the burghers

sich ûf genâde wolden geben,
themselves upon grace would give,

ob er die helde mit dem leben
if he the heroes with the life

mit fride wolde lâzen
with peace would let

varn heim ir strâzen.
fare home their streets.

daz begunde den gesten allen
that began to-the guests all

von herzen wol gevallen
from heart well to-please

durch daz grôze ungemach.
for the great hardship.

der keiser zuo den fürsten sprach
the emperor to the princes spoke

waz sie dar umbe diuhte guot.
what them there about seemed good.

sie vielen alle an einen muot
they fell all on one mind

daz sie ez gerne wolden sehen.
that they it gladly would see.

der keiser sprach 'nu sî geschehen.'
the emperor spoke 'now be-it done.'

Dô der fride wart getân,
When the peace became made,

als ich iu ê gesagt hân,
as I to-you before told have,

daz in der keiser die hant rahte,
that to-them the emperor the hand reached,

sînen vanen er dô stahte
his banner he then stuck

ûf einen turn, der was hôch.
upon a tower, that was high.

dâ mit er sich zer stat zôch.
there with he himself to-the city drew.

des wâren sumelîche unfrô.
of-that were some unglad.

iedoch muose ez sîn alsô,
yet must it be so,

wan er selbe dâ vür lac.
for he self there before lay.

sie hâten als vil manigen tac
they had so very many-a day

gewert dem rîche sêre,
withstood the realm sorely,

unz sie niht mohten mêre
until they not might more

geherten wider dem rîche.
hold-out against the realm.

sie hâten sich frumlîche
they had themselves valiantly

vil dicke von in gehouwen,
very often from them hewn,

daz man wol mohte schouwen
that one well might behold

an den vil guoten knehten
in the very good knights

daz si wol getorsten vehten.
that they well dared fight.

dem keiser und al sînen man
to-the emperor and all his men

geschach vil liebe dar an
happened very dear there in

daz in diu burc wart gegeben.
that to-them the castle became given.

man liez sie drûz mit dem leben
one let them thereout with the life

varn die dannen solden
fare who thence should

swar sie selbe wolden.
whither they self would.

da beleip vil manic weise.
there remained very many-a orphan.

dô wârn ouch âne freise
then were also without peril

die mit dem keiser wârenkomen.
those-who with the emperor were-come.

etelîche hâten dâ genomen
some had there taken

daz si überwunden nimmer mêr.
what they overcame never more.

do besazt der künic hêr
then garrisoned the king lordly

die burc mit sînen mannen
the castle with his men

und schiet zehant von dannen.
and parted at-once from thence.

sie brâchen abe ir gezelt
they broke off their tents

unde rûmten daz velt
and left the field

und branten die herberge.
and burned the lodgings.

die liehten halsberge
the bright hauberks

sach man von in schînen dan.
saw one from them shine thence.

ob in swebt des rîches van,
above them hovered the realm's banner,

dem volgte manic degens genôz:
it followed many-a thane's peer:

daz her was kreftic unde grôz.
the host was mighty and great.

Dô fuor der künic rîche
Then fared the king rich

vil gar zorneclîche
very wholly wrathfully

durch des herzogen lant.
through the duke's land.

er stifte roup unde brant.
he caused robbery and burning.

er schuof im grôz ungemach.
he made to-him great hardship.

sîne bürge er nider brach:
his castles he down broke:

daz muose er allez vertragen.
that must he all bear.

er hete sô kreftigen magen
he had so mighty strength

daz im niht mohte vor gestân.
that him nothing might before stand.

er wolde im niht belîben lân:
he would to-him nothing remain let:

er muose allez hân verlorn.
he must all have lost.

sus rach der keiser sînen zorn
thus avenged the emperor his anger

daz er verdarp im daz lant.
that he ruined for-him the land.

dar umbe er manigen wîgant
there about he many-a fighter

dar under liez ze phande,
there among left as pledge,

der nimmer mê ze lande
who never more to land

kam mit sînem lebene.
came with his life.

ez gestuont im niht vergebene
it stood to-him not in-vain

swaz er schaden von im gewan.
whatever he of-harm from him got.

die von des herzogen man
those of the duke's men

vil manlîche sluogen,
very manfully struck,

wan sie in niht vertruogen,
for they to-them not endured,

dô sie ir lant herten.
when they their land harried.

vil manlîch sie daz werten
very manfully they that warded

die wîle daz sie mohten
the while that they might

und sie ze strîte tohten.
and they to strife availed.

Do der herzoge Ernest ervant
When the duke Ernst found

daz im verhert was sîn lant
that to-him harried was his land

und man im die veste an gewan,
and one from-him the fortresses off won,

dô klagete ez der küene man
then lamented it the bold man

den sînen die im in der nôt
to-the his who to-him in the distress

gestuonden bî unz in den tôt,
stood by until into the death,

wan er ir mit flîze phlac.
for he of-them with diligence took-care.

dar umbe sie im naht unt tac
there about they him night and day

hulfen rechen sîn herzeleit.
helped avenge his heart's-sorrow.

dem künige er vaste zuo reit.
to-the king he hard toward rode.

die sîne ouch vaste branden
the his also hard burned

mit ellenthaften handen
with valiant hands

beide vür unde wider.
both forth and back.

vil bürge brach er im nider.
many castles broke he to-him down.

do er die obern hant gewan,
when he the upper hand won,

er stummelt sîne dienestman:
he mutilated his vassals:

sumlîche er ze tôde sluoc.
some he to death struck.

er tete im leides genuoc.
he did to-him of-sorrow enough.

die ûf in hâten gesworn,
who against him had sworn,

die muosen alle haben verlorn
they must all have lost

beide lîp unde guot.
both body and goods.

sus wont der degen hôchgemuot
thus dwelt the thane high-spirited

in sînem lande vür wâr
in his land for true

mêr danne fünf jâr
more than five years

mit urliuge gên dem rîche
with war against the realm

sô daz der ellentrîche
so that the valor-rich-one

dar inne âne ir danc beleip,
there in without their thanks remained,

daz in noch nieman vertreip
that him still no-one drove-out

mit keiner slahte listen.
with of-any kind wiles.

er kunde sich wol fristen
he could himself well sustain

mit ellen und mit wîsheit.
with valor and with wisdom.

die sîne wâren im bereit
the his were to-him ready

und behielten im sîn êre
and kept for-him his honor

sô lange unz daz der hêre
so long until that the lordly-one

durch des urliuges herte
through the war's hardness

vergap und ouch verzerte
gave-away and also spent

allez daz er mohte hân.
all that he might have.

dô muose er sich vertrîben lân.
then must he himself drive-out let.

Dô Ernest der fürste hêr
When Ernst the prince lordly

daz urliuge niht mêr
the war not more

moht haben gein dem rîche,
might have against the realm,

dô tete er wîslîche,
then did he wisely,

'sît ichz durch nôt muoz lân:'
'since I-it through need must leave:'

do besande er alle sîne man,
then summoned he all his men,

die besten von dem lande,
the best from the land,

der ellen er bekande.
whose valor he knew.

er las ûz den nôtvesten
he chose out-of the need-steadfast

fünfzic die aller besten
fifty the of-all best

die im nie geswichen
who from-him never fell-away

noch in keiner nôt entwichen:
nor in any distress gave-way:

sie wolden mit im vertriben sîn.
they would with him driven-out be.

er sprach ‘ir sît die friunt mîn
he spoke ‘you are the friends my

die mich noch verliezen nie.
who me still forsook never.

swelich nôt mich an gie,
whatever distress me on went,

ir sît frumlîch bî mir gestân.
you are valiantly by me stood.

iuwern rât wil ich hân,
your counsel will I have,

wan ich ie triuwe an iu vant.
for I ever faith in you found.

nu liget verwüestet mîn lant,
now lies laid-waste my land,

beide beroubet und verhert.
both robbed and harried.

dar zuo hân ich gar verzert
there to have I wholly spent

allez daz ich ie gewan.
all that I ever won.

nu wellent mînen schatz hân
now will my treasure have

die lieben helfære mîn.
the dear helpers my.

sie wellent des gewis sîn,
they will of-that certain be,

ich habe goldes die fluot.
I have of-gold the flood.

nu bin ich,’ sprach der helt guot,
now am I,’ spoke the hero good,

‘verurliuget harte sêre.
‘worn-out-by-war very sorely.

ouch ist mir der künic hêre
also is to-me the king lordly

vîent und al sîne man:
enemy and all his men:

daz ich vil wol vernomen hân. 1770
that I very well heard have.

sie râtent an mîn êre.
they plot against my honor.

ich mac leider mêre
I can alas more

niht dem rîche widerstân.
not to-the realm withstand.

ich hân alsô vil getân
I have so much done

dês alle liute wunder nimt, 1775
of-which all people wonder takes,

swâ manz hœret und vernimt,
wherever one-it hears and learns,

deich im sô lange ie vor gesaz.
that-I to-him so long ever against held-out.

dâ macht ez aller meiste daz:
there makes it of-all most that:

ir hulfet mir frumlîchen.
you helped me valiantly.

nu muoz ich im entwîchen 1780
now must I from-him give-way

durch vorhte und durch gehôrsam.
for fear and for obedience.

swer swimmet wider wazzers stram,
whoever swims against water's current,

ergêt ez im ein wîle wol,
(if)-goes it to-him a while well,

vür wâr ich iu daz sagen sol,
for true I to-you that tell shall,

er vert ze jungest doch ze tal.
he fares at-the last yet to dale.

nu vürhte ich den selben val,
now fear I the same fall,

wan der ist uns ze hûse komen.
for it is to-us to house come.

ir habet daz dicke wol vernomen,
you have that often well heard,

swer lange urliuge wider daz rîche hât,
whoever long war against the realm has,

ob er im ein wîle widerstât,
if he to-it a while withstands,

ze jungest muoz er an dem schaden stên:
at-the last must he at the harm stand:

alsô mac ez ouch mir ergên.
so may it also to-me go.

Wir haben uns dem rîche
We have ourselves against-the realm

gewert sô manlîche
defended so manfully

und dar zuo allen sînen man
and there to all its men

sô grôzen schaden her getân,
so great harm hitherto done,

deich in dem lande niht mac langer sîn.
that-I in the land not may longer be.

ir wizzet ouch, lieben friunde mîn,
you know also, dear friends my,

wir habenz umb uns gar verhert
we have-it about us wholly harried

und unser selber guot verzert,
and our own goods spent,

daz wir müezen verderben.
that we must perish.

möhten wir noch iht erwerben,
might we still aught win,

als wir ê gewinnes phlâgen,
as we before of-gain took-care,

do wir ûf der vînde schaden lâgen,
when we upon the enemies' harm lay,

dô mohten wir niht vollenzern
then might we not spend-wholly

und uns der vînde wol gewern.
and ourselves of-the enemies well defend.

nu suln wir wîslîchen
now shall we wisely

dem keiser entwîchen.
from-the emperor give-way.

wir sîn nu gar âne wer.
we are now wholly without defense.

daz wir füeren über mer,
that we should-fare over sea,

dar stêt vaste mir der muot.
thither stands hard to-me the mind.

ob ez iuch herren dunket guot,
if it you lords seems good,

sô sol uns des durch got gezemen
so shall us of-that for God befit

daz wir durch in daz kriuze nemen
that we for him the cross take

ze dienste dem heilegen grabe.
to service to-the holy grave.

sô komen wir sîn mit êren abe,
so come we of-it with honors off,

ê wir uns sus vertrîben lân.
before we ourselves thus drive-out let.

wir haben wider gote getân
we have against God done

daz wir im billîch müezen
what we to-him rightly must

ûf sîn hulde büezen,
upon his favor atone,

daz er uns die schulde ruoche vergeben
that he to-us the guilt deign forgive

her nâch, obe wirz geleben,
here after, if we-it live-to,

und wider heim ze lande komen.
and back home to land come.

swaz uns der keiser hât benomen,
whatever from-us the emperor has taken,

daz wirt uns allez wider lân.
that becomes to-us all back left.

nu bite ich iuch mâg unde man
now beg I you kinsmen and men

alle gemeine,
all in-common,

daz ir mich niht eine
that you me not alone

lât varn von dem lande.
let fare from the land.

des hât ir wîgande
of-that have you fighters

almuosen und êre.
alms and honor.

ouch wil ichz immer mêre
also will I-it ever more

gegen iuwern hulden
toward your favor

mit guote verschulden
with goods repay

und mit dienste widerwegen,'
and with service requite,'

sprach der tiwerlîche degen.
spoke the precious thane.

VII · THE CRUSADE

Ernst's men gladly agree to take the cross; Adelheit sends money and costly cloth, and a thousand knights join him. He is received generously by the king of Hungary and at Constantinople, whose king gives him a ship and provisions, and he sails over the sea with a Greek fleet of fifty ships and more.

Dô sprâchen die helde guote
Then spoke the heroes good

alle ûz einem muote,
all out-of one mind,

im hæte got den sin gesant.
to-him had God the sense sent.

sie wolden durch den wîgant
they would for the fighter

ûf ein wâge setzen den lîp,
upon a hazard set the life,

dar zuo kint unde wîp
there to child and wife

got hie heime bewarn lân,
God here at-home guard let,

und wolden mit im bestân,
and would with him stand,

durch got varn über mer.
for God fare over sea.

dâ wider enstüende kein wer,
there against would-stand no defense,

ez enwær der tôt alleine.
unless-it were the death alone.

daz lobtens alle gemeine,
that promised-they all in-common,

sie wolden mit im an die vart.
they would with him on the journey.

daz wart dô langer niht gespart.
that became then longer not spared.

der herzoge und sîne man
the duke and his men

giengen frôlîche dan
went joyfully thence

dâ sie daz kriuze nâmen.
where they the cross took.

diu mære schiere kâmen
the tidings soon came

vil wîten in daz lant,
very widely into the land,

daz Ernest der wîgant
that Ernst the fighter

daz kriuze hæte genomen,
the cross had taken,

(daz was in liep vernomen)
(that was to-them dear heard)

und daz fünfzic sîner man
and that fifty of-his men

mit im wolden varn dan,
with him would fare thence,

die der tiwerlîche helt
whom the precious hero

ze sîner verte hæte erwelt,
for his journey had chosen,

gote ze dienste über sê.
to-God for service over sea.

dar nâch wart ir verre mê
there after became of-them far more

die sich zeichenten ûf die vart.
who themselves marked for the journey.

der herzoge wol bereitet wart
the duke well prepared became

dar zuo mit grôzem flîze:
there to with great diligence:

die halsberge wîze,
the hauberks white,

dar zuo die hosen îserîn,
there to the hose of-iron,

die herten helme stehelîn,
the hard helms of-steel,

dar zuo diu scharphen swert,
there to the sharp swords,

sie wâren alles des wol wert,
they were all of-that well worthy,

die tiuren wîgande.
the precious fighters.

mit sô rîchem gwande
with so rich gear

rûmten sie daz rîche,
left they the realm,

daz man wærlîche
that one truly

in keinem lande funde
in no land should-find

noch immer vinden kunde
nor ever find could

die mit der rehten wârheit
who with the right truth

zer verte wâren baz bereit.
for-the journey were better prepared.

ern wolde unschulde rechen,
unless-he would innocence avenge,

nieman getorste sprechen
no-one dared say

daz die helde guote
that the heroes good

durch ir armuote
for their poverty

gerûmet hæten ir lant.
left had their land.

daz wart in allen wol erkant.
that became to-them all well known.

Si bereiten sich übers meres fluot.
They readied themselves over-the sea's flood.

des fröut sich manic helt guot
of-that rejoiced himself many-a hero good

die ouch gote dienen wolden,
who also God serve would,

daz sie mit im varn solden.
that they with him fare should.

genuoge in tiutschem lande
many in German land

tiure wîgande
precious fighters

wâren sîner verte frô.
were of-his journey glad.

sîn muoter diu künigin sande im dô
his mother the queen sent to-him then

fünf hundert marc ze stiure
five hundred marks as help

und manic pheller tiure,
and many-a brocade precious,

hermîn unde sîden wât,
ermine and silken clothing,

mit golde harte wol genât
with gold very well sewn

und manic hêrlîch bettegwant.
and many-a lordly bed-clothing.

die gâbe enphienc der wîgant
the gift received the fighter

und neic ir ze lône.
and bowed to-her as reward.

die gâbe teilte er schône
the gift divided he beautifully

mit sînen jungelingen.
with his youths.

er was in allen dingen
he was in all things

ein ritter vil tugentlîch.
a knight very virtuous.

waz mohte des der fürste rîch,
what might of-that the prince rich,

daz man in âne schult vertreip?
that one him without guilt drove-out?

die wîle er in dem lande beleip,
the while he in the land remained,

dô leit er solhe arbeit
then suffered he such toil

daz man immer dâ von seit.
that one ever there of tells.

Der tac sich nâhen began
The day itself to-near began

daz der herre und sîne man
that the lord and his men

gên dem mere solden varn.
toward the sea should fare.

zuo im kam mit manigen scharn
to him came with many troops
vil ritter ûz fremden landen,
many knights out-of foreign lands,
die in wol bekanden,
who him well knew,
die in bâten durch got
who him begged for God
und durch sîner zuht gebot,
and for his breeding's command,
daz er die lieze werden schîn
that he that let become visible
und in genædic ruochte sîn,
and to-them gracious deign be,
daz sie möhten mit im varn,
that they might with him fare,
wan er kunde sie bewarn,
for he could them guard,
swelich nôt sie ane kæme,
whatever distress them on should-come,
daz er ir dienest drumbe næme
that he their service there-for should-take
unz in die burc ze Jêrusalêm.
until into the castle at Jerusalem.
swaz er an wolde gên,
whatever he on would go,
daz woldens al mit im bestân
that would-they all with him stand
und nimmer dienstes abe gân
and never from-service off go
durch deheiner slahte nôt.
for of-any kind distress.

sie wæren im bereit unz in den tôt
they were to-him ready until into the death

mit lîbe und mit guote.
with body and with goods.

‘des ist uns wol ze muote:
‘of-that is to-us well in mind:

gebietet über al daz wir hân.’
command over all that we have.’

dô sprach der ellenthafte man
then spoke the valiant man

‘ich hân iur rede wol vernomen.
‘I have your speech well heard.

nu sît gote willekomen,
now be to-God welcome,

vil lieben friunde, unde mir,
very dear friends, and to-me,

und sît sicher daz ir
and be sure that you

nimmer werdet von mir verlân
never become by me forsaken

die wîle und ich den lîp hân:
the while and I the life have:

der wirt durch iuch geveilet
it becomes for you offered

und sî mit iu geteilet
and be with you shared

beide grôz und kleine
both great and small

sol iu sîn gemeine,
shall to-you be common,

swaz mir got gegeben hât.
whatever to-me God given has.

sît ir iuch an mich lât
since you yourselves to me leave

und des ze mir geruochet,
and of-that to me deign,

daz ir an mir suochet
that you in me seek

helfe mit triuwen,
help with faith,

ez sol iuch niht geriuwen
it shall you not rue

die wîle ich mînen lîp hân.
the while I my life have.

ich wil iuch alle gerne enphân
I will you all gladly receive

ze bruodern und ze gesellen.
as brothers and as companions.

ich ensol mich nimmer gezellen
I shall myself never count

iwer keinem ze hêren.
of-you any as lord.

ir muget alle mit êren
you may all with honors

sîn mîn genôze an dirre var,
be my peers on this journey,

und wizzet daz ich iuch bewar
and know that I you guard

beide naht unde tac,
both night and day,

sô ich aller beste mac.'
as I of-all best may.'

des dancten im die helde guot.
for-that thanked him the heroes good.

der herzoge was vil wol gemuot
the duke was very well minded

daz er sô manigen werden man
that he so many-a worthy man

ze sîner reise gewan.
for his journey won.

er het ze flîze wol gar
he had with diligence well wholly

tûsent ritter an sîner schar,
thousand knights in his troop,

erwelter wîgande,
chosen fighters,

die mit im ûz dem lande
who with him out-of the land

zuo den zîten fuoren
at the times fared

und im alle swuoren
and to-him all swore

daz sie im wæren undertân
that they to-him were subject

und lobten in ze houbetman.
and promised him as captain.

Do der herzoge bereit wart
When the duke ready became

mit flîze ûf sîne mervart,
with diligence for his sea-journey,

als dem fürsten wol gezam,
as to-the prince well befitted,

dô er urloup genam
when he leave took

und er sich huop von dannen,
and he himself raised from thence,

von sînen mâgen und mannen
by his kinsmen and men

wart geklaget alsô sêre
became lamented so sorely

daz man nimmer mêre
that one never more

vernimt von solhen leiden,
hears of such sorrows,

dô sie sich von im scheiden
when they themselves from him part

muosen unde solden.
must and should.

alle sîne holden
all his followers

hâten trûrigen muot,
had sad mind,

wande sie der recke guot
for them the warrior good

ie mit grôzen triuwen hielt
ever with great faith held

die wîl daz ir der helt wielt.
the while that them the hero ruled.

dô rûmte er daz rîche
then left he the realm

harte frümeclîche,
very valiantly,

der vil edele wîgant,
the very noble fighter,

und liez bürge unde lant,
and left castles and land,

dar zuo eigen und dienstman
there to property and vassals

sînen mâgen, den erz solde lân,
to-his kinsmen, to-whom he-it should leave,

ob manz in niht sît nam.
if one-it from-them not afterward took.

sus fuor der fürste hêrsam
thus fared the prince lordly

ûz von sînen selden
out from his dwellings

mit ûzerwelten helden.
with chosen heroes.

Der herzoge Ernest was gemeit
The duke Ernst was merry

daz sîn schar was sô breit,
that his troop was so broad,

wan im volgte gên dem mer
for him followed toward the sea

ein vil kreftigez her.
a very mighty host.

sie fuoren frôlîche dan.
they fared joyfully thence.

der grâve Wetzel sîn man
the count Wetzel his man

was ein ûz erwelter degen.
was a out chosen thane.

den hiez er dô des hers phlegen:
him bade he then of-the host to-take-care:

daz tete er manlîche.
that did he manfully.

sie fuoren sô werlîche
they fared so warlike

daz sie muosen fride hân.
that they must peace have.

alsô fuoren sie dô dan
so fared they then thence

frôlîch hin in Ungerlant.
joyfully thither into Hungary.

dô daz dem künige wart erkant,
when that to-the king became known,

er was im grôze willekomen
he was to-him greatly welcome

durch daz er hâte vernomen
for that he had heard

von im solich manheit,
of him such manhood,

daz er mit sîner frümekeit
that he with his valor

sich sô lange hæte erwert
himself so long had defended

unde vor dem rîche ernert.
and before the realm saved.

er begunde vil wol enphân
he began very well to-receive

den herren und al sîne man.
the lord and all his men.

dô er nâher zuo im kam,
when he nearer to him came,

die helde er zuo im nam
the heroes he to himself took

und bôt in michel êre.
and offered to-them great honor.

des dancte er im dô sêre.
for-that thanked he him then greatly.

er schuof im nahtselde.
he made for-him night-lodging.

dô gap er dem helde
then gave he to-the hero

sîn gâbe frôlîche
his gift joyfully

und hiez in wirdeclîche
and bade him worthily

leiten durch sîniu lant.
lead through his lands.

die gâbe enphienc der wîgant
the gift received the fighter

unde schiet von im vil frô.
and parted from him very glad.

der künic frumte sie dô
the king dispatched them then

durch der Bulgære walt.
through the Bulgarians' forest.

sus fuoren dise helde balt
thus fared these heroes bold

dannen frôlîche
thence joyfully

ze Kriechen in diu rîche.
to Greece into the realms.

Sus riten die helde guote
Thus rode the heroes good

mit frôlîchem muote
with joyful spirit

ze Constantînopel in die stat.
to Constantinople into the city.

sînen marschalc er dô bat
his marshal he then bade

daz er langer niht bite
that he longer not should-wait

und vür mit den knehten rite
and forth with the squires should-ride

und herberge næmen:
and lodging should-take:

sô sie nâch hin kæmen,
when they after thither should-come,

daz sie gemach möhten hân.
that they comfort might have.

daz wart schiere kunt getân
that became soon known made

dem der des rîches dô wielt.
to-him who of-the realm then ruled.

mit grôzem flîze er enthielt
with great diligence he maintained

den herzogen und sîn geste,
the duke and his guests,

wan er von sage wol weste
for he from report well knew

daz er âne schulde was vertriben,
that he without guilt was driven-out,

und wie lange er dô was beliben,
and how long he then was remained,

daz er sich des keisers werte
that he himself against-the emperor defended

und doch daz rîche herte,
and yet the realm harried,

und wie frumeclîche er dan schiet.
and how valiantly he thence parted.

do gebôt er aller sîner diet
then commanded he all his folk

daz sie ir wol phlægen
that they of-them well should-take-care

die wîle sie dâ lægen,
the while they there should-lie,

der herzoge mit sînen man.
the duke with his men.

daz wart mit flîze getân.
that became with diligence done.

sie wæren arm od rîche,
they were poor or rich,

man phlac ir hêrlîche
one took-care of-them lordly

und baz dan sie solden.
and better than they should.

man tet swaz sie wolden.
one did whatever they would.

Dâ was der herzoge hêre
There was the duke lordly

drî wochen oder mêre,
three weeks or more,

ê der künic erwerben kunde
before the king obtain could

ein scheph oder funde
a ship or found

daz dem herren tohte
which for-the lord availed

und daz getragen mohte
and which carry might

ir spîse, dar zuo ir gewant.
their food, there to their clothing.

einen kiel er doch ze jungest vant
a keel he yet at-the last found

der in zer verte wol gezam.
which to-them for-the journey well befitted.

der edel künic lobesam
the noble king praiseworthy

hiez si in daz schef wîsen
bade them into the ship guide

und volleclîche spîsen
and fully provision

mit guoter frischer lîpnar
with good fresh victuals

diu sie werte ein halbez jâr,
which them lasted a half year,

und gap in dar zuo sîn golt.
and gave to-them there to his gold.
er was dem herzogen holt
he was to-the duke gracious
durch sîn grôze frümekeit.
for his great valor.
dô ez allez was bereit
when it all was ready
und daz sie solden varn dan,
and that they should fare thence,
dô gienc der wætlîche man
then went the comely man
vür den künic rîchen.
before the king rich.
dô warp gezogenlîchen
then sought courteously
urloup der degen mære,
leave the thane famous,
sît er bereit wære
since he ready were
und volleclîche wol bewart
and fully well provided
mit spîse ûf sîne hervart.
with food for his campaign.
'daz ist von den genâden dîn:
'that is from the graces thy:
dar umb wir immer suln sîn
there about we ever shall be
dir mit dienest undertân,
to-thee with service subject,
die wîle wir daz leben hân,
the while we the life have,
daz wir got biten um dîn leben.
that we God beg for thy life.

du solt uns nu urloup geben,'
thou shalt to-us now leave give,'

sprach der tiwerlîche degen.
spoke the precious thane.

dô hiez im der künic wegen
then bade to-him the king weigh

sînes goldes genuoc.
of-his gold enough.

ze sînem schiffe man daz truoc.
to his ship one that carried.

dô sprach der künic rîche
then spoke the king rich

'got lâze iuch suntlîche
'God let you sinlessly

in sînem dienste gevarn
in his service fare

und iuch alsô bewarn
and you so guard

daz ir im gedienet alsô
that you to-him serve so

daz wir mit iu werden frô.
that we with you become glad.

des wünsche ich iu und iuwer diet.'
that wish I to-you and your folk.'

der herzoge dô dannen schiet
the duke then thence parted

von dem künic rîche.
from the king rich.

mit den sînen frôlîche
with the his joyfully

trat der helt an sînen kiel.
stepped the hero onto his keel.

den Kriechen vil wol geviel
to-the Greeks very well pleased
der herzoge und sîn her.
the duke and his host.
dô schifte mit im über mer
then sailed with him over sea
durch liebe und durch friuntschaft
for love and for friendship
der Kriechen ein michel kraft
of-the Greeks a great force
mit fünfzic schiffen unde mê,
with fifty ships and more,
die mit im fuoren über sê
who with him fared over sea
und wâren im gehôrsam.
and were to-him obedient.
durch daz er sô wol dar kam
for that he so well thither came
mit den sînen in daz lant,
with the his into the land,
des lobten sie den wîgant.
for-that praised they the fighter.

A storm scatters the fleet and sinks twelve ships, and Ernst's keel drifts three months on unknown seas until it reaches the land of Grippia and a splendid castle of colored marble. Finding the gates open and no one inside, Ernst and his men go in armed and find the tables laid with gold and brocade.

Dô sie alle urloup genâmen
When they all leave took

unde zuo den schiffen kâmen,
and to the ships came,

ir segel wurden gezogen hô.
their sails became drawn high.

dannen huoben sie sich dô,
thence raised they themselves then,

die edelen wîgande,
the noble fighters,

gên Sûrîe dem lande.
toward Syria the land.

sie wâren guotes rîche
they were of-goods rich

und fuoren frôlîche,
and fared joyfully,

daz ir freude nie gelac.
that their joy never lay-still.

do ez kam über den fünften tac
when it came beyond the fifth day

daz si wâren ûf dem hôhen sê,
that they were on the high sea,

dô huop sich jâmer unde wê
then rose itself grief and woe

underm gotes gesinde.
among God's household.

ein sturm harte swinde
a storm very swift

diu schef alle sô zetreip
the ships all so scattered

daz einz bîm andern niht beleip.
that one by-the other not remained.

zwelve zehant versunken,
twelve at-once sank,

die liute drinne ertrunken
the people therein drowned

unde kurn den grimmen tôt.
and chose the grim death.

die andern liten grôze nôt
the others suffered great distress

ûf dem vil freislîchem mer.
on the very fearsome sea.

dâ wart des herzogen her
there became the duke's host

sô verre getriben ûf den sê
so far driven upon the sea

daz ir keiner nimmer mê
that of-them any never more

den andern lebendic sît gesach.
the other living afterward saw.

des leit er michel ungemach.
of-that suffered he great hardship.

Dem herzogen begunde leiden
To-the duke began to-grieve

daz er alsô solde scheiden
that he so should part

von den kriechischen mannen.
from the Greek men.

der wint treip sie dannen
the wind drove them thence

verre ûf des meres fluot.
far upon the sea's flood.

doch hâte der helt guot
yet had the hero good

dar an wîslîchen getân:
there in wisely done:

er hâte alle sîne man
he had all his men

und die küenen wîgande,
and the bold fighters,

die im von tiutschem lande
who to-him from German land

und ûf der strâzen wâren komen,
and on the road were come,

die hâte er alle genomen
them had he all taken

zuo im ûf sînen kiel:
to him onto his keel:

daz im sider vil wol geviel
which to-him afterward very well pleased

daz sie alsô wâren bliben.
that they so were remained.

dô sie wurden zetriben
when they became scattered

sô verre ûf dem wilden sê
so far on the wild sea

dâ weder sît noch ê
where neither afterward nor before

nie kein mensche hin kam,
never any person thither came,

dô leit der helt vil lobesam
then suffered the hero very praiseworthy

mit sînen mannen grôze nôt,
with his men great distress,

dô sie den grimmigen tôt
when they the grim death

mit ir ougen muosen sehen.
with their eyes must see.

man mac mit wârheite jehen
one may with truth say

daz im geschach vil dicke wê.
that to-him happened very often woe.

man gehôrte nie sagen mê
one heard never tell more

von alsô starker arbeit
of so strong toil

sô der herzoge Ernest leit.
as the duke Ernst suffered.

Do der herzoge mit sînem her
When the duke with his host

fuor alsô swebende ûf dem mer
fared so hovering on the sea

drî mânet unde mêre,
three months and more,

daz die recken vil hêre
that the warriors very lordly

nie kâmen ze lande,
never came to land,

dô was dem wîgande
then was to-the fighter

dâ von der muot harte swâr,
there from the mind very heavy,

wan in was der lîpnar
for to-them was the victuals

nu vil gar zerrunnen,
now very wholly run-out,

und hâten sich verkunnen
and had themselves despaired

daz si nimmer mohten genesen.
that they never might survive.

sus muosen die recken wesen
thus must the warriors be

gevangen mit den sorgen.
captured with the cares.

fruo wider einen morgen,
early toward a morning,

dô der tac ûf gienc,
when the day up went,

der luft lûtern gevienc.
the air clearness took.

dô wart gestillet diu nôt.
then became stilled the distress.

lieht wart der morgen rôt
bright became the morning red

und wart daz weter harte guot,
and became the weather very good,

als ez nâch ungewitere tuot.
as it after storm does.

der himel wart vil wol gevar,
the heaven became very well colored,

daz mer lûter unde clâr:
the sea pure and clear:

ouch gelâgen die winde
also lay-still the winds

die sie dâ vor sô swinde
which them there before so swiftly

wurfen her unde dar.
threw hither and thither.

die helde wurden gewar
the heroes became aware

daz in trôst wolde nâhen.
that to-them comfort would near.

sie sâhn in allen gâhen
they saw in all haste

ein vil hêrlîchez lant:
a very lordly land:

daz was Grippiâ genant.
that was Grippia named.

des wurden sie dô vil frô.
of-that became they then very glad.

des endes kêrten sie dô
of-that end turned they then

unde sigelten in ein habe.
and sailed into a harbor.

ir anker sie dô wurfen abe:
their anchor they then threw off:

guoten grunt sie funden.
good ground they found.

do gesâhen si an den stunden
then saw they at the hours

ein hêrlîche burc stân,
a lordly castle stand,

diu was al umbevân
which was all enclosed

mit einer guoten miure.
with a good wall.

diu was harte tiure
it was very precious

von edelem marmelsteine.
of noble marble-stone.

die wâren algemeine
they were all-in-common

gel grüene und weitîn,
yellow green and woad-blue,

daz sie niht schœner mohte sîn,
that it not more-beautiful might be,

swarz rôt und wîze:
black red and white:

dâ mite was sie ze flîze
there with was it with diligence

geschâchzabelt und gefieret,
checkered and squared,

manigen ende gezieret
many ends adorned

von maniger hande bilde,
with many-a kind image,

beide zam und wilde,
both tame and wild,

die man kunde genennen
which one could name

oder ieman mohte erkennen,
or anyone might know,

lûter lieht als ein glas.
clear bright as a glass.

ein grabe dar umb geworfen was,
a moat there about dug was,

dâ durch ein wazzer flôz
there through a water flowed

daz die burc gar beslôz.
that the castle wholly enclosed.

ouch wâren die zinnen
also were the battlements

beide ûzen und innen
both outside and inside

meisterlîch gezieret,
masterfully adorned,

mit golde wol gevieret
with gold well squared

und mit edelem gesteine,
and with noble gems,

beide grôz unde kleine,
both great and small,

allez meisterlîch geworht.
all masterfully wrought.

diu burc stuont gar unervorht:
the castle stood wholly unafraid:

sie vorhte niemannes her.
it feared no-one's host.

werchûs berfrît brustwer
war-houses towers breastwork

gemâlt und meisterlîch ergraben,
painted and masterfully engraved,

als wirz von den buochen haben
as we-it from the books have

dâ ez an geschriben stât.
where it on written stands.

wol im derz uns getihtet hât
well to-him who-it to-us composed has

sô rehte wol ze tiute.
so rightly well in German.

wunderlîche liute
wondrous people

∗∗∗ die veste
(lacuna) the fortress

der schîn vil verre gleste.
whose shine very far gleamed.

Do die guoten wîgande
When the good fighters

kâmen dar ze lande,
came there to land,

die sigel sie nider liezen.
the sails they down let.

ir barken sie ouch stiezen
their barges they also pushed

unde ankerten zehant.
and anchored at-once.

dô sprach Ernst der wîgant
then spoke Ernst the fighter

beidiu ze friunden und ze man
both to friends and to men

'mich dunket vil wol getân,
'me seems very well done,

sît daz uns got hât gesant
since that us God has sent

her in ditze schœne lant,
hither into this beautiful land,

ze dirre bürge wol getân,
to this castle well made,

sît wir sô lützel spîse hân,
since we so little food have,

daz wir hie umb spîse werben,
that we here for food sue,

ê daz wir gar verderben.
before that we wholly perish.

wir hân mit kumber vil gelebt
we have with trouble much lived

und lange ûf dem mer geswebt,
and long on the sea hovered,

daz wir niender zuo komen kunden.
that we nowhere to come could.

nu wir dise burc hân vunden
now we this castle have found

sô wünneclîch erbûwen,
so delightfully built,

sô wil ich des wol getrûwen,
so will I of-that well trust,

sie habe liute dies bewarn.
it have people who-it guard.

daz sulen wir hiute ervarn,
that shall we today find-out,

ob sie heiden sîn od cristen,
whether they heathens be or Christians,

unde handeln daz mit listen,
and handle that with cunning,

daz sie uns spîse ze koufe geben.
that they to-us food to buy give.

habent sie niht cristen leben,
(if)-have they not Christian life,

sô lâzent sie uns niht genesen.
so let they us not survive.

sô lân wir uns als mære wesen,
so let we ourselves as dear be,

ob uns der lîp hie wirt genomen.
if from-us the life here becomes taken.

sît wir durch got sîn ûz komen,
since we for God are out come,

deste baz suln wirz verklagen,
the better shall we-it lament-away,

ob wir hie werden erslagen,
if we here become slain,

danne wir durch hungers nôt
than we for hunger's distress

in disem schiffe lægen tôt.'
in this ship should-lie dead.'

Dô sie die rede heten vernomen,
When they the speech had heard,

sie sprâchen 'wir sîn ûz komen
they spoke 'we are out come

durch got und anders keine nôt:'
for God and other no need:'

sie wolden gerne den tôt
they would gladly the death

in sîme dieneste holn
in his service fetch

und immer gerne durch in doln
and ever gladly for him suffer

beide liep unde leit.
both joy and sorrow.

die helde küene und gemeit
the heroes bold and merry

garten sich mit flîze
girded themselves with diligence

in die halsberge wîze.
in the hauberks white.

dô sie sich gewâfent hâten,
when they themselves armed had,

an die barken sie trâten.
onto the barges they stepped.

dô sie kâmen ûz an daz lant,
when they came out onto the land,

der herzoge Ernest an bant
the duke Ernst on bound

einen vanen, der was rôt.
a banner, that was red.

dem grâven Wetzel er gebôt
to-the count Wetzel he commanded

daz er in næme in die hant.
that he it should-take into the hand.

dô leite sie der wîgant
then led them the fighter

vil manlîche von dan.
very manfully from thence.

sie hâten ir wâfen an,
they had their arms on,

dar zuo helme und schilde.
there to helms and shields.

über daz gevilde
over the field

wîste sie der küene man.
guided them the bold man.

dô truoc er manlîche dan
then bore he manfully thence

den vanen unz an daz burctor.
the banner until to the castle-gate.

dâ gestuonden sie dô vor.
there stood they then before.

Diu burctor wâren ûf getân.
The castle-gates were up made.

dô sâhen die küenen man
then saw the bold men

nieman an den zinnen,
no-one on the battlements,

weder ûze noch innen.
neither outside nor inside.

des nam sie michel wunder.
of-that took them great wonder.

sie sprâchen alle besunder
they spoke all separately

'ich enweiz waz diz diute.
'I know-not what this means.

diz sint seltsæne liute,
these are strange people,

daz sie sich niht sehen lânt.
that they themselves not see let.

ich wæn sie sich verborgen hânt,
I believe they themselves hidden have,

daz sie sich vor uns fristen.
that they themselves from us save.

sie wellent uns mit listen
they will us with cunning

in die burc bringen,
into the castle bring,

daz si deste baz geringen
that they the better wrestle

mit uns, sô wir dar în gân.
with us, when we there in go.

ez ist durch anders niht getân,
it is for other nothing done,

daz si sich niht wellent erbarn.
that they themselves not will reveal.

sie suln sich vil wol bewarn,
they shall themselves very well guard,

sie mugen komen von uns in nôt.
they may come from us into distress.

ê daz wir von in ligen tôt,
before that we by them lie dead,

wir frumen etlîchen tôten
we make some dead

ze verhe verschrôten.'
to life hewn.'

dô sprach Ernst der küene man
then spoke Ernst the bold man

'wir suln ez alsô ane vân,
'we shall it so on take,

ê wir hie kiesen den tôt,
before we here choose the death,

und erwerben wîn und brôt
and win wine and bread

und ander unser lîpnar.
and other our victuals.

wir sîn ze strîte wol gar
we are for strife well ready

in veste liehte ringe.
in firm bright rings.

nu sult ir jungelinge
now shall you youths

iuch zesamene drucken
yourselves together press

und über die brücke rucken
and over the bridge move

mit dem vanen in daz burctor.
with the banner into the castle-gate.

ê sie uns immer dâ vor
before they us ever there before

verdringen mit ir sinnen,
push-back with their wits,

wir sîn mit in dar innen,
we are with them there in,

daz wizzet, recken, mit gewalt.
that know, warriors, with force.

dâ verkouft iuch, helde balt,
there sell yourselves, heroes bold,

noch hiute in dirre veste,
still today in this fortress,

daz man sulher geste
that one of-such guests

gedenke immer mêre
think ever more

mit leide und mit sêre.'
with sorrow and with pain.'

Dô giengen die helde guote
Then went the heroes good

mit ellenthaftem muote
with valiant mind

vaste zuo dem vanen stân.
hard by the banner stand.

den truoc der vil küene man
it bore the very bold man

manlîch in sînen henden
manfully in his hands

und brâhte die ellenden
and brought the exiles

vür die burc in daz burctor.
before the castle into the castle-gate.

dâ enwar in nieman vor.
there hindered them no-one before.

sie liefen unde sprungen.
they ran and sprang.

dô si in die burc drungen,
when they into the castle pressed,

dô was dâ nieman innen,
then was there no-one inside,

der in keiner unminnen
who to-them any hostility
büte zuo der selben zît.
should-offer at the same time.
dô giengen die helde âne strît
then went the heroes without strife
mitten in die burc stân.
in-the-middle in the castle stand.
ob ieman wolde zuo in gân,
whether anyone would to them go,
des warten noch die küenen.
of-that waited still the bold-ones.
einen hof grüenen,
a court green,
ze allen zîten küele,
at all times cool,
sie funden manic gestüele
they found many-a seat
in einer würmelâge hêrlîch,
in a serpent-place lordly,
daz nie keiser wart sô rîch,
that never emperor became so rich,
er möhte ze tische dar în gân.
he might to table there in go.
dô sâhen si innerthalben stân,
then saw they on-the-inside stand,
die edelen jungelinge,
the noble youths,
al umbe ze ringe
all about in ring
manigen tisch vil wünneclîch,
many-a table very delightful,
dar ûf phelle und golt rîch,
there upon brocade and gold rich,

vil spæhe dâ zen orten
very skillfully there at-the edges

genât mit edelen borten.
sewn with noble braids.

IX · THE EMPTY CASTLE

Ernst has his men eat, forbids them to touch the gold, and has the ship provisioned; then he returns with Wetzel to see more of the castle, leaving his men to come if they hear fighting. They wander through its palaces, a chamber with a jeweled bed, a court of cedars, and a bath fed by warm and cold springs through silver pipes, and the poet describes how the castle's streets are washed clean.

Daz gesidele daz was reine.
The seats that was pure.

die tische al gemeine
the tables all in-common

wârn gerihtet vil wol,
were prepared very well,

als ich iu sagen sol.
as I to-you tell shall.

sie sâhen ûf ieclîchem tische
they saw on each table

fleisch brôt unde vische,
meat bread and fishes,

môraz met clârêt und wîn,
mulberry-wine mead claret and wine,

daz beste daz iender kunde sîn,
the best that anywhere could be,

dar zuo wilt unde zam.
there to wild and tame.

wâ manz in dem lande nam,
where one-it in the land took,

des ist ze frâgen lützel nôt.
of-that is to ask little need.

köphe näphe goltrôt,
cups goblets gold-red,

die schüzzel von silber wol getân.
the dishes of silver well made.

swaz sie dem lîbe wolden hân,
whatever they for-the body would have,

des fundens dâ die wirtschaft.
of-that found-they there the hospitality.

dô sprach ze sîner ritterschaft
then spoke to his knighthood

Ernest der vil küene degen
Ernst the very bold thane

'nu sult ir iuwer zühte phlegen,
'now shall you your breeding practice,

sô tuot ir wîslîchen:
so do you wisely:

und sult vil flîzeclîchen
and shall very diligently

gedanken unserm trähtîn
thank our Lord

der vil rîchen gâbe sîn
of-the very rich gift his

die er uns hiute hât gesant,'
which he to-us today has sent,'

sprach der küene wîgant,
spoke the bold fighter,

'da wir vinden unde mugen nemen.
'where we find and may take.

swaz uns spîse mac gezemen,
whatever to-us of-food may befit,

die mugen wir âne sünde hân.
that may we without sin have.

daz ander sult ir ligen lân.
the other shall you lie let.

got wil uns lîhte versuochen.
God will us perhaps test.

nu sult ir niht enruochen
now shall you not care

ir goldes noch ir zierheit.
of-their gold nor their adornment.

dise pheller alsô breit
these brocades so broad

lât iu gar unmære sîn.
let to-you wholly indifferent be.

danket unserm trähtîn
thank our Lord

der uns vil dicke hât ernert
who us very often has saved

und dise spîse hât beschert.
and this food has bestowed.

der wart uns noch nie sô nôt.
of-it became to-us still never so need.

wir wærn des übelen hungers tôt
we would-have of-the evil hunger dead

lasterlîch und âne wer
shamefully and without defense

gelegen ûf dem wilden mer.
lain on the wild sea.

des lobt in alle besunder.
for-that praise him all separately.

ez ist ein michel wunder
it is a great wonder

daz got mit uns hât getân.
that God with us has done.

nu sult ir zuo den tischen gân
now shall you to the tables go

beide arme und rîche
both poor and rich

und ezzet frôlîche,
and eat joyfully,

daz ir den lîp wol gelabet.
that you the body well refresh.

swanne ir daz getân habet,
when you that done have,

sô volget mînem râte,
so follow my counsel,

und ladet vil wunderndrâte
and load very wondrous-quickly

iwer schif mit der spîse,
your ship with the food,

unze uns got gewîse
until us God guides

ze Jêrusalêm in daz lant.
to Jerusalem into the land.

wirn mugen hie,' sprach der wîgant,
we may here,' spoke the fighter,

'niht langer sîn unze fruo:
'not longer be until early:

(dâ warnt iuch allesamt zuo)
(there ready yourselves all-together to)

sô müezen wir varn hinnen.
so must we fare hence.

ich bin des worden innen:
I am of-that become aware:

disiu burc ist nie sô frî,
this castle is never so free,

ir liute sint etwâ hie bî
its people are somewhere here by

vil nâhen,' sprach der jungelinc.
very near,' spoke the youth.

'dar nâch schaffen unser dinc.
'there after make our thing.

sie koment uns vil schiere.' 2445
they come to-us very soon.'

dô giengen die helde ziere
then went the heroes fine

und twuogen ir hande.
and washed their hands.

die küenen wîgande
the bold fighters

über die tische sâzen.
at the tables sat.

sie trunken und âzen, 2450
they drank and ate,

unz si sich des hungers erwerten.
until they themselves of-the hunger defended.

swie vil sie der spîse verzerten,
however much they of-the food consumed,

man mohte ir lützel mangel hân.
one might of-it little lack have.

sie stuonden von den tischen sân,
they stood from the tables at-once,

die helde vermezzen. 2455
the heroes daring.

dô sie hâten gezzen,
when they had eaten,

der wîse und ouch der tumbe
the wise and also the foolish

in der bürge giengen umbe
in the castle went about

und sâhen alle besunder
and saw all separately

diu manicvalden wunder
the manifold wonders

von golde und von gesteine,
of gold and of gems,

von grôzer zierde reine.
of great adornment pure.

dô sie des war nâmen,
when they of-that heed took,

in ein hûs sie kâmen:
into a house they came:

dâ fundens, als in got gebôt,
there found-they, as to-them God commanded,

fleisch wîn unde brôt.
meat wine and bread.

des was dar în sô vil getragen
of-that was there in so much carried

daz iu daz nieman kan gesagen.
that to-you that no-one can tell.

ein künic und allez sîn her
a king and all his host

hæte dâ von rîche zer
would-have there from rich provision

daz sie dar inne funden.
which they there in found.

zuo den selben stunden
at the same hours

wurdens alle vil frô.
became-they all very glad.

ir schif daz spîsten sie dô.
their ship that provisioned they then.

vil balde daz geschach.
very quickly that happened.

sie fuoren wider an ir gemach
they fared back to their rest

und liezen die burc wol getân
and let the castle well made

offen und alsô wüeste stân.
open and so empty stand.

ze schiffe kâmen die recken gmeit
to ship came the warriors merry

und ruoten nâch ir arbeit.
and rested after their toil.

Dô sie ein wîle also gelâgen
When they a while so lay

und ir gemaches phlâgen,
and of-their rest took-care,

dô sprach der herzoge Ernest sân
then spoke the duke Ernst at-once

zem grâven Wetzel sînem man
to-the count Wetzel his man

‘mich lustet vil sêre
‘me lusts very sorely

daz ich hin wider kêre
that I thither back turn

und die burc baz besehe,
and the castle better see,

swaz halt mir dar inne geschehe:
whatever indeed to-me there in happen:

sie ist sô rehte wol getân.
it is so rightly well made.

welt ir mit mir dar gân,
(if)-will you with me thither go,

daz lât mich wizzen hie zehant.'
that let me know here at-once.'

'jâ ich', sprach der wîgant,
'yes I', spoke the fighter,

'ich wil benamen mit iu gân.
'I will assuredly with you go.

ob ich den lîp dâ solde lân,
if I the life there should leave,

des sult ir gar ân angest sîn.
of-that shall you wholly without fear be.

nu sult ir, lieber herre mîn,
now shall you, dear lord my,

unser geverten alle biten
our companions all beg

daz sie mit bruoderlîchen siten
that they with brotherly manners

uns ze helfe sîn bereit
to-us to help be ready

durch ir selber wirdekeit
for their own worthiness

und benamen durch den rîchen got
and assuredly for the rich God

und durch ir zühte gebot
and for their breeding's command

uns schiere mit dem vanen komen,
to-us soon with the banner come,

swanne sie daz haben vernomen
when they that have heard

daz wir dort sîn bestanden,
that we there are attacked,

mit ellenthaften handen
with valiant hands

uns ze helfe komen über al,
to-us to help come over all,

sô sie vernemen den schal,
when they hear the clamor,

daz sie uns lœsen enzît.
that they us release in-time.

diu burc ist kreftic unde wît:
the castle is mighty and wide:

wir sulns noch baz beschouwen.
we shall-it still better behold.

ich mac des niht getrouwen,
I may of-that not trust,

dâ sîn noch inne liute.
there be still inside people.

swaz man dâ mit bediute
whatever one there with signify

daz si sich niht wellent enbarn,
that they themselves not will reveal,

ich wæn sie wellen uns ervarn
I believe they will us find-out

waz wir wellen an gân.
what we will on go.

nu sie uns niht wellent bestân,
now they us not will attack,

sô suln wir mit sinnen
so shall we with wits

an in werden innen
in them become aware

wes in gên uns ze muote sî.
of-what to-them toward us in mind be.

der rîche got stê uns bî!
the rich God stand us by!

swes sie dâ mit gedâht hân,
whatever they there with thought have,

wir suln benamen dar gân,
we shall assuredly thither go,

ez gê ze schaden oder ze fromen.
it go to harm or to profit.

ob wir hiute nimmer dâ von komen,
if we today never there from come,

wir sulnz noch versuochen baz.'
we shall-it still try better.'

do gelobten in die helde daz,
then promised to-them the heroes that,

sie hulfen in von der nôt
they would-help them from the distress

oder sie gelægen bî in tôt.
or they would-lie by them dead.

Dô sie wider kâmen gegân,
When they back came walking,

dô fundens in der bürge stân
then found-they in the castle stand

manic werc hêrlîch,
many-a work lordly,

von golde harte zierlîch.
of gold very ornate.

vil maniger hande wunder
very many-a kind wonder

sâhen sie besunder
saw they separately

von golde und von gesteine.
of gold and of gems.

manigen palas reine
many-a palace pure

sâhen sie dar inne stân
saw they there in stand

schœne unde wol getân,
beautiful and well made,

vil gar wunderlîch geworht.
very wholly wondrously wrought.

ouch sâhn die helde unervorht
also saw the heroes unafraid

manic gewelbe und hôhe tür,
many-a vault and high door,

die lûhten sam die sternen vür,
which shone like the stars forth,

die niender ûf der erden
which nowhere on the earth

baz gezieret mohten werden.
better adorned might become.

beide ûzen und innen
both outside and inside

von meisterlîchen sinnen
from masterly wits

was sie gebûwen über al.
was it built over all.

vil manigen hêrlîchen sal
very many-a lordly hall

sâhen sie dar inne stân.
saw they there in stand.

disiu burc vil wol getân
this castle very well made

stuont sô nâhe bî dem mer,
stood so near by the sea,

ein rîcher künic mit sînem her
a rich king with his host

wolde ir der geschadet hân,
(if)-would to-it he harmed have,

er müeses mit gemache lân.
he must-it in peace leave.

Dô sie daz wunder dô gesâhen,
When they the wonder then saw,

dô begundens dannen gâhen.
then began-they thence to-hasten.

wider zer würmelâge se kâmen
back to-the serpent-place they came
dâ sie die spîse ê dâ nâmen.
where they the food before there took.
dâ vür begunden sie dô gân.
there before began they then to-go.
dô sâhens dâ bî nâhe stân
then saw-they there by near stand
ein vil rîchez palas
a very rich palace
daz mit golde wol bedecket was,
which with gold well covered was,
von smâragde sîne wende,
of emerald its walls,
wol gemacht in allem ende,
well made in every end,
durchliuhtic grüene.
translucent green.
do gesach der vil küene
then saw the very bold
Ernest der vil werde man
Ernst the very worthy man
ein kemenâten wol getân:
a chamber well made:
diu was gezieret innen
it was adorned inside
von meisterlîchen sinnen
from masterly wits
von edelem gesteine.
with noble gems.

die wâren algemeine
they were all-in-common

in liehtem golde schône erhaben
in bright gold beautifully raised

und meisterlîche wol ergraben.
and masterfully well engraved.

dô sie dar în begunden gân,
when they there in began to-go,

ein spanbette sie sâhen stân,
a bedstead they saw stand,

als wir daz mære hœren sagen,
as we the tale hear tell,

daz was mit golde wol durchslagen
that was with gold well inlaid

beide schône und rîche,
both beautiful and rich,

und was vil meisterlîche
and was very masterfully

mit berlîn gefieret
with pearls squared

und mit steinen wol gezieret
and with stones well adorned

von vil fremden sachen.
of very strange things.

lewen unde trachen,
lions and dragons,

nâtern unde slangen,
adders and snakes,

die lâgen an den spangen
they lay on the clasps

geworht von golde, daz was lieht.
wrought of gold, that was bright.

sie wâren des versûmet nieht
they were of-that neglected not

sin wærn geworht mit vollen.
unless-they were wrought in full.

oben ûf den vier stollen
above on the four posts

lâgen vier edele steine.
lay four noble stones.

die wâren nicht ze kleine.
they were not too small.

die gelîchten wol der sunnen
they likened well to-the sun

und lûhten sam sie brunnen.
and shone as-if they burned.

sie glasten als ein glüendiu gluot.
they gleamed as a glowing ember.

des fröwete sich der helt guot,
of-that rejoiced himself the hero good,

Ernst der recke vil gemeit.
Ernst the warrior very merry.

zwei bette wâren drûf geleit,
two beds were thereon laid,

mit rîchem pheller wol bezogen,
with rich brocade well covered,

an hôher kost vil unbetrogen.
in high cost very undeceived.

diu lînlachen [wâren] sîdîn,
the linen-sheets [were] silken,

ein deckelachen hermîn,
a coverlet of-ermine,

dar umbe ein lîste wol genât,
there about a border well sewn,

die man in hôher koste hât,
which one in high cost holds,

von edeln gesteine manicvalt.
of noble gems manifold.

dar obe ein sîdîn blîalt,
there above a silken bliaut,

mit guotem golde wol durchslagen,
with good gold well inlaid,

liehte sîden drîn getragen,
bright silk therein worked,

ein lîste wît unde rîch.
a border wide and rich.

daz dûhte michel wunderlîch
that seemed very wondrous

die zwêne jungelinge.
to-the two youths.

swære und niht ze ringe
heavy and not too light

eine sidel wol getân
a seat well made

die sâhens vor dem bette stân:
that saw-they before the bed stand:

diu was algemeine
it was all-in-common

von wîzem helfenbeine
of white ivory

vil spæhelîchen ergraben
very skillfully engraved

und mit golde wol erhaben
and with gold well raised

mit meisterlîchen listen.
with masterly arts.

vier grôze âmetisten
four great amethysts

ûf den knöphen obene
upon the knobs above

stuonden wol ze lobene
stood well to praise

wît und rôt als ein bluot.
wide and red as a blood.

ein pheller tiure unde guot
a brocade precious and good

was dar über gespreitet.
was there over spread.

sus was diu sidel bereitet
thus was the seat prepared

vor dem rîchen bette dâ.
before the rich bed there.

ein samît vierecke unde blâ
a samite square and blue

was geleit an den esterîch,
was laid on the floor,

geziert mit einem borten rîch
adorned with a braid rich

und an koste stiure.
and in cost dear.

zwên guldîn köphe tiure
two golden cups precious

bî dem bette nâhen
by the bed near

sie dô stên sâhen,
they then stand saw,

dar inne was der beste wîn
there in was the best wine

der in dem lande mohte sîn
which in the land might be

oder immer man enbîze.
or ever one might-taste.

sus schône was mit flîze
thus beautifully was with diligence

der grôze dienest bereit.
the great service prepared.

dâ was diu grœstiu rîcheit
there was the greatest richness

diu in der werlde mohte sîn:
which in the world might be:

daz was an manigen dingen schîn.
that was in many things visible.

Dô die ritter vil gemeit
When the knights very merry

besâhn die grôzen rîcheit
beheld the great richness

in der kemenâten
in the chamber

und wider ûz getrâten,
and back out stepped,

dâ neben sâhen sie dô stân
there beside saw they then stand

einen grôzen hof wol getân,
a great court well made,

wît und vil schône.
wide and very beautiful.

manigen zêder grône
many-a cedar green

funden sie dar inne stân.
found they there in stand.

si begunden dar nâher gân.
they began thither nearer to-go.

sie sâhen zwêne brunnen
they saw two springs

die ûz dem hove runnen,
which out-of the court ran,

der ein was warm, der ander kalt.
the one was warm, the other cold.

mit listen sô was daz gestalt
with arts so was that shaped

daz sie vil schône schuzzen
that they very beautifully shot

und reineclîche duzzen
and purely murmured

mit ein ander an ein stat.
with one another at one place.

dâ bî stuont ein schœne bat:
there by stood a beautiful bath:

daz was algemeine
it was all-in-common

von grüenem marmelsteine
of green marble-stone

wol gewelbet und überzogen,
well vaulted and overlaid,

gevest mit starken swibogen.
fastened with strong arches.

wie möhte daz zierlîcher sîn?
how might that more-ornate be?

zwô bütten rôt guldîn
two tubs red golden

die stuonden in liehtem schîne.
they stood in bright shine.

zwô rôre silberîne,
two pipes of-silver,

geworht mit grôzen fuogen,
wrought with great joinings,

die daz wazzer dar în truogen.
which the water there in carried.

mit listen sô was daz getân.
with arts so was that done.

swederez man wolde hân,
whichever one would have,

warm wazzer oder kalt,
warm water or cold,

des truogen die rôre mit gewalt
of-that carried the pipes with force

den beiden bütten genuoc.
to-the both tubs enough.

ein êrîn antwerc ez truoc
a bronze engine it carried

anderthalp ûz dem bade dan,
on-the-other-side out-of the bath thence,

als wir daz vernomen hân.
as we that heard have.

ez was ouch geleitet,
it was also led,

über al die burc gebreitet:
over all the castle spread:

daz geschach mit sinne.
that happened with wit.

die strâzen dar inne
the streets there in

beide grôz und kleine
both great and small

wârn von marmelsteine,
were of marble-stone,

sumlîche grüene als ein gras.
some green as a grass.

so in der burc erhaben was
when in the castle raised was

und man dâ schône wolde hân,
and one there beauty would have,

sô liez man daz wazzer sân
so let one the water at-once

über al die burc gên.
over all the castle go.

sô mohte dâ niht bestên
so might there not remain

weder daz hor noch der mist.
neither the filth nor the dung.

in einer vil kurzen frist
in a very short while

sô wart diu burc vil reine.
so became the castle very clean.

ich wæne burc deheine
I believe castle none

ûf erden ie sô rîch gestê:
on earth ever so rich stands:

ir strâzen glizzen sô der snê.
its streets glistened as the snow.

Ernst and Wetzel bathe and rest in the chamber, then arm again. From a hidden window they watch the people of Grippia return, handsome folk with the necks and heads of cranes, bringing their king's bride, the daughter of the king of India, whose parents the king killed at sea.

Als Ernst der edel recke balt
When Ernst the noble warrior bold

disiu wunder manicvalt
these wonders manifold

in der bürge gesach,
in the castle saw,

ze dem grâven Wetzel er dô sprach
to the count Wetzel he then spoke

'vil sneller degen hêre,
'very swift thane lordly,

mich lustet vil sêre
me lusts very sorely

daz wir in daz bat gân.
that we into the bath go.

wir durfen kein angest hân.
we need no fear have.

als ich mich versinne,
as I myself bethink,

hie ist niht lebendes inne
here is nothing living inside

daz uns künne geschaden
that us can harm

unze daz wir gebaden.
until that we have-bathed.

wil ieman zuo der bürge komen,
(if)-will anyone to the castle come,

daz haben wir schiere vernomen
that have we soon heard

und bereiten uns ze wer.
and ready ourselves for defense.

wir haben ûf dem wilden mer
we have on the wild sea

erliten sô grôz ungemach,
suffered so great hardship,

daz uns lützel gnâde geschach.
that to-us little grace happened.

nu loben wir unsern trähtîn
now praise we our Lord

daz wir her komen sîn,
that we hither come are,

dâ wir gemach mugen hân.'
where we comfort may have.'

dô sprach der grâve sîn man
then spoke the count his man

'sît ir des niht welt enbern,
'since you of-that not will forgo,

sô muoz ich iuch sîn gewern.
so must I you of-it grant.

ir sult aber gewis sîn,
you shall but certain be,

und stüende ez an dem willen mîn,
and should-stand it at the will my,

sô müest irz underwegen lân.
so must you-it undone let.

nu irs niht,' sprach der küene man,
now you-of-it not,' spoke the bold man,

'wellet sîn ze râte,
'will be to counsel,

sô gên ouch vil drâte
so go also very quickly

und baden kurzlîche,
and bathe briefly,

und wizzet sicherlîche,
and know surely,

es ist uns wunderlîche nôt,
it is to-us wondrous need,

wan daz ich vürhte den tôt
except that I fear the death

hie âne wer enphâhen.'
here without defense to-receive.'

dô begundens balde gâhen
then began-they quickly to-hasten

sliefen ûzme gewande.
slipped out-of-the clothing.

die edeln wîgande
the noble fighters

in die bütten sâzen.
into the tubs sat.

sie muosen selbe lâzen
they must self let

daz bat dar în fliezen.
the bath there in flow.

die rôre sie ûf stiezen.
the pipes they up pushed.

lûter wazzer dar ûz flôz
clear water there out flowed

daz in die bütten zuo in gôz
which into the tubs to them poured

beide warm unde kalt.
both warm and cold.

des wâren die helde balt
of-that were the heroes bold

in ir muote vil frô.
in their mind very glad.

alsô badeten sie sich dô.
so bathed they themselves then.

do si wol gebadet hâten,
when they well bathed had,

ûz dem bade sie trâten,
out-of the bath they stepped,

und daz in nieman schade was.
and that to-them no-one harm was.

durch den vil liehten palas
through the very bright palace

sie begunden gâhen,
they began to-hasten,

dâ sie nieman sâhen,
where they no-one saw,

in die kemenâte.
into the chamber.

dô leiten sie sich drâte
then laid they themselves quickly

an daz spanbette wol getân
on the bedstead well made

daz si dâ gezieret sâhen stân,
which they there adorned saw stand,

und ruoten nâch ir bade dô.
and rested after their bath then.

des wart vil maniger sît unfrô.
of-that became very many-a-one afterward unglad.

Dô der herre und sîn degen
When the lord and his thane

ein wîle wâren gelegen,
a while were lain,

der grâve Wetzel sprach duo
the count Wetzel spoke then

deme edelen herren zuo
to-the noble lord to

‘ez ist zît daz wir ûf stân
‘it is time that we up stand

und wider ze unserm schiffe gân
and back to our ship go

da wir unser geverten liezen.
where we our companions left.

sie mac des wol verdriezen
them may of-that well irk

und von schulden erlangen,
and by right grow-long,

wie ez uns sî ergangen
how it to-us be gone

hie in dirre burge.
here in this castle.

ich hân des grôze sorge,
I have of-that great care,

sie zurnen uns sêre.
they are-angry with-us sorely.

nu sult ir, fürste hêre,
now shall you, prince lordly,

sliefen balde in iuwer wât,
slip quickly into your clothing,

swie ez uns dar nâch ergât,
however it to-us there after goes,

daz wir ze wer doch sîn bereit.
that we for defense yet be ready.

wir hân die grôze rîcheit
we have the great richness

in dirre bürge wol gesehen.
in this castle well seen.

wir mugen des mit wârheit jehen,
we may of-that with truth say,

daz wir noch nie gesâhen
that we still never saw

weder verre noch nâhen
neither far nor near

niht glîches dirre rîcheit.
nothing like this richness.

sie ist lanc unde breit,
it is long and broad,

wît unde kreftic,
wide and mighty,

schœne unde mehtic,
beautiful and powerful,

wert und êrbære.
worthy and honorable.

ez wart nie burc sô mære
there became never castle so famous

geworht ûf dirre erden
wrought on this earth

noch nimmer kunde werden
nor ever could become

erbûwen alsô schône.
built so beautifully.

sist aller bürge ein krône,
it-is of-all castles a crown,

die man in der werlde hât gesehen:
which one in the world has seen:

des muoz ich ir immer jehen.'
of-that must I to-it ever grant.'

Die zwêne degen hêre
The two thanes lordly

enbeiten dô niht mêre,
waited then not more,

sie garten sich vil schiere.
they girded themselves very soon.

sie wâren helde ziere:
they were heroes fine:

dem tâten sie dicke gelîch.
to-that did they often alike.

ir wâfen daz was hêrlîch
their arms that was lordly

unde lobelîch genuoc.
and praiseworthy enough.

nie keiser sô rîche krône truoc,
never emperor so rich crown bore,

sie zæmen wol an sîner schar.
they would-befit well in his troop.

sie wârn sô ritterlîch gevar.
they were so knightly colored.

ir schilde sie geviengen:
their shields they grasped:

zehant sie dannen giengen
at-once they thence went

ûz der kemenâte
out-of the chamber

durch den palas drâte:
through the palace quickly:

der lûhte algemeine.
it shone altogether.

von edelem gesteine
of noble gems

manic gewelbe drinne was.
many-a vault therein was.

gezieret was der palas
adorned was the palace

schône unde wünneclîch.
beautifully and delightfully.

daz wunder was unmæzlîch
the wonder was measureless

daz dar ane ergraben lac.
which there on engraved lay.

jâ belûhte der tac
yes shone-on the day

keinen alsô rîchen sal
no so rich hall

in der werlt über al.
in the world over all.

Dô sie daz wunder gar gesâhen,
When they the wonder wholly saw,

dô hôrten sie in allen gâhen
then heard they in all haste

ein wunderlîche stimme,
a wondrous voice,

starc unde grimme,
strong and grim,

vor der bürge an dem gevilde,
before the castle on the field,

ob ez kraniche wilde
as-if it cranes wild

bevangen hæten über al,
seized had over all,

alsô ungefüegen schal
so monstrous clamor

alse ie man vernam.
as ever one heard.

vil lût unde freissam
very loud and fearsome

was dâ ir gebrehte.
was there their noise.

des nam die guoten knehte
of-that took the good knights

beide vil michel wunder.
both very great wonder.

dô giengen dan besunder
then went thence separately

die zwêne ritter gemeit
the two knights merry

stên an ein gewarheit
stand in a safe-place

undr ein gewelbe vinster.
under a vault dark.

dar ûz gienc ein venster
there out went a window

ob der würmelâge hô.
above the serpent-place high.

dar în leneten sie dô.
there in leaned they then.

übr al die burc sie wol sâhen,
over all the castle they well saw,

beide verre unde nâhen,
both far and near,

swaz dar inne und vor geschach,
whatever there in and before happened,

und daz sie doch nieman sach.
and that them yet no-one saw.

dar inne muosen sie dô stên:
there in must they then stand:

nieman kunde zuo in gên.
no-one could to them go.

sie wurden sîn wol innen:
they became of-it well aware:

si bewarten sich mit sinnen.
they guarded themselves with wits.

Dô sie ein wîle heten gestân,
When they a while had stood,

die vil ellenthaften man,
the very valiant men,

und allenthalben sâhen,
and everywhere looked,

dô wurdens in allen gâhen
then became-they in all haste

vor dem burctor gewar
before the castle-gate aware

einer seltsænen schar
of-a strange troop

von mannen und von wîben.
of men and of women.

die wâren an ir lîben,
they were in their bodies,

sie wæren junc oder alt,
they were young or old,

schœne unde wol gestalt
beautiful and well shaped

an füezen und an henden
in feet and in hands

und in allen enden
and in all ends

schœne liute und hêrlîch,
beautiful people and lordly,

wan hals und houbet was gelîch
except neck and head was alike

als den kranichen getân.
as to-the cranes made.

der sâhens rîten unde gân
of-them saw-they ride and go

gein der bürge ein michel her.
toward the castle a great host.

die fuorten kein ander wer
they carried no other defense

wan ir schilt unde bogen
except their shields and bows

unde kocher wol gezogen,
and quivers well drawn,

dar inne strâle freislîch.
there in arrows fearsome.

daz truoc umbe ir ieclîch.
that bore about of-them each.

rîche phelle und samît,
rich brocade and samite,

sumlîche von timît,
some of dimity,

dar nâch als ieclîch wolde,
there after as each would,

von sîden und von golde
of silk and of gold

was gezieret ir gewant.
was adorned their clothing.

an ir lîbe nieman vant
in their body no-one found

zer werlt deheiner slahte kranc,
in-the world of-any kind weakness,

wan daz in die helse wâren lanc,
except that to-them the necks were long,

ritterlîch übr al den lîp.
knightly over all the body.

beide man unde wîp
both men and women

wâren alle alsô gestalt.
were all so shaped.

sie fuorten kraft und gewalt.
they carried strength and power.

Noch wil ich iu baz betiuten
Still will I to-you better explain

von den seltsænen liuten,
of the strange people,

als ich von in vernomen hân.
as I of them heard have.

in was diu burc undertân:
to-them was the castle subject:

dâ wârn si ûf gesezzen,
there were they up settled,

ir lîbes vil vermezzen,
of-their body very daring,

und wâren stolz und gemeit,
and were proud and merry,

und hâten grôze rîcheit
and had great richness

an silber unde an golde,
in silver and in gold,

als vil und ieman wolde.
as much as anyone would.

sie hâten micheln gewin.
they had great gain.

einen künic hâtens under in,
a king had-they among them,

dem beide wîp unde man
to-whom both women and men

mit dienste wâren undertân.
with service were subject.

der was gevarn mit sîme her
he was fared with his host

mit vil galîen ûf daz mer
with many galleys upon the sea

in daz lant ze Indiâ.
into the land to India.

den künic selben hâte er dâ
the king self had he there

brâht von dem lîbe,
brought from the life,

do er mit sîme wîbe
when he with his wife

zeiner sîner bürge wolde varn.
to-one his castle would fare.

dô kunde er sich des niht bewarn
then could he himself of-that not guard

ern müese lîden herzen sêr.
unless-he must suffer heart's pain.

von Grippiâ der künic hêr
of Grippia the king lordly

sluoc in ze tôde an der stunt.
struck him to death at the hour.

den kiel sancte er an den grunt
the keel sank he to the bottom

mit der küniginne.
with the queen.

da genas dô nieman inne
there survived then no-one inside

wan des küniges tohter von Indiâ.
except the king's daughter of India.

diu behielt daz leben alleine dâ
she kept the life alone there

(der andern einez niht genas,
(of-the others one not survived,

swaz ir in dem schiffe was)
whatever of-them in the ship was)

durch die schœne an ir lîbe.
for the beauty on her body.

dâ wold er sie hân ze wîbe
there would he her have to wife

der rîche künec von Grippiâ.
the rich king of Grippia.

heim fuorte er sie dâ
home led he her there

mit fröiden lobelîche.
with joys praiseworthily.

gên der was sô grôzlîche
toward her was so greatly

solh wirtschaft bereit dar,
such feast ready there,

und wâren gegen ir ûz gar
and were toward her out wholly

gevarn wîp kint und man,
fared women children and men,

und wolden sie mit freude enphân,
and would her with joy receive,

dô sie zuo dem stade kâmen
when they to the shore came

und die burger daz vernâmen.
and the burghers that heard.

dise wunderlîche liute
these wondrous people

kâmen mit der briute
came with the bride

mit schalle vür daz burctor.
with clamor before the castle-gate.

dâ wâren sie erbeizet vor
there were they dismounted before

beide wîp unde man.
both women and men.

ir wât diu was wol getân
their clothing it was well made

von gezierde manicvalt.
of adornment manifold.

dô dise recken vil balt
when these warriors very bold

disiu wunder vernâmen
these wonders perceived

und rehte war genâmen
and rightly heed took

diser seltsænen diet,
of-this strange folk,

dô envorhten sie in niet.
then feared they them not.

sie huoben sie vil unhô.
they rated them very low.

der herzoge sprach dô
the duke spoke then

zuo dem grâven sînem man
to the count his man

'ich wil daz wir hie stân.
'I will that we here stand.

uns kan doch von in niht geschehen.
to-us can yet from them nothing happen.

hie mugen wir allez daz sehen
here may we all that see

swes sie beginnen.
whatever they begin.

wir komen doch wol von hinnen
we come yet well from hence

ze dem schiffe ân ir aller danc.
to the ship without of-them all thanks.

ez ist zem âbent noch lanc:
it is to-the evening still long:

wir mugen wol langer hie stân
we may well longer here stand

unz wir allez daz gesehen hân
until we all that seen have

swaz sie nu wellen machen.
whatever they now will make.

ich mac des wol gelachen
I may of-that well laugh

daz in die helse sint sô kleine.
that to-them the necks are so small.

ich weiz wol daz sie algemeine
I know well that they all-in-common

in dise würmelâge gênt
into this serpent-place go

zuo den tischen die dâ stênt,
to the tables which there stand,

dâ solh wirtschaft ist ûf geleit.
where such feast is up laid.

disiu spîse was bereit
this food was ready

gein in hiute morgen.
for them this morning.

sie wârn des âne sorgen,
they were of-that without cares,

dô sie sie sus liezen eine,
when they it thus left alone,

daz in grôz oder cleine
that to-them great or small

schade dâ von solde ergên:
harm there from should come:

des mahtu selbe dich verstên.'
of-that mayst-thou self thyself understand.'

Wetzel vows to cut through the crane-folk, but they wait and watch the procession: the nobles, the king with a swan's neck and head, and the weeping Indian princess. At the feast the crane-folk wonder who has eaten their food, and the king thrusts his beak into the princess's mouth; Ernst proposes that they rush the hall and rescue her.

Des antwurte der grâve sân
For-that answered the count at-once

'herre, ich bin dîn man:
'lord, I am thy man:

du versihst dich triuwen her ze mir.
thou expectest thyself of-faith hither to me.

die wil ich gerne leisten dir
that will I gladly perform to-thee

mit lîbe und mit guote.
with body and with goods.

des ist mir wol ze muote.
of-that is to-me well in mind.

diz volc hât gein uns kleine wer.
this folk has against us little defense.

ob noch grœzer wære ir her,
if still greater were their host,

sô vorhte ich sie vil kleine.
so would-fear I them very little.

ich wil alters eine
I will quite alone

tûsent bestân und mê.
thousand withstand and more.

den geschiht allen von mir wê,
to-them happens all from me woe,

koment sie mir ze mâze.
(if)-come they to-me in measure.

ich houwe eine strâze
I hew a street

durch sie mit dem swerte mîn.
through them with the sword my.

des solt du wol gewis sîn,
of-that shalt thou well certain be,

daz ich sie vil wênic spar.
that I them very little spare.

wir sîn ze strîte wol gar.
we are for strife well ready.

underloufen wir in die phîle,
(if)-run-under we to-them the arrows,

wir machen in einer wîle
we make in a while

solhen mort under in,
such murder among them,

mich betriege dan mîn sin,
unless-me deceive then my wit,

daz wir sie der bogen ergetzen
that we them of-the bows deprive

und des houptes geletzen
and of-the head deprive

noch hiute vil manigen man.
still today very many-a man.

ez sol in schedelîch ergân.
it shall to-them harmfully go.

in sint die helse alsô smal,
to-them are the necks so narrow,

hie wirt ein vil michel val,
here becomes a very great fall,

ob sie uns an springen.
if they us at spring.

wir suln sie innen bringen
we shall them inside bring

hie in ir eigen veste,
here in their own fortress,

daz sie sô leider geste
that they so grievous guests

in ir lant nie mê gewunnen
into their land never more won

noch niemer gewinnen kunnen.'
nor never win can.'

Alsô begunden sie dô stên.
So began they then to-stand.

dô sâhens zuo dem tor în gên
then saw-they to the gate in go

neben ein ander zwêne man.
beside one other two men.

die sâhen sie tragen an
them saw they wear on

zwei vil rîcher hemde
two very rich shirts

von sîden vil fremde
of silk very strange

wol durchleit und genât.
well inlaid and sewn.

zwêne rocke tribelât
two coats of-triblat

die herren truogen dar obe.
the lords wore there over.

die kleider stuonden wol ze lobe.
the clothes stood well to praise.

ir beider hosen ûz gesniten,
of-them both hose out cut,

zerhouwen wol nâch hübeschen siten.
slashed well after courtly customs.

dar über manic goltdrât.
there over many-a gold-thread.

dâ durch schein diu lînwât
there through shone the linen

wîzer danne kein snê.
whiter than any snow.

in wârn dar über gespannen ê
to-them were there over buckled before

zwêne guldîne sporn.
two golden spurs.

die zwêne wâren erkorn
the two were chosen

ze den besten nâch dem künige hie.
as the best after the king here.

dar umbe man sie vor im gên lie.
there about one them before him go let.

schœne und hêrlîch was ir ganc,
beautiful and lordly was their gait,

ir helse smal unde lanc,
their necks narrow and long,

gelîch den kranichen gevar
like the cranes colored

von dem houpte unz ûf den lîp gar.
from the head until to the body wholly.

dar zuo truoc ir ieclîch
there to bore of-them each

einen kocher hêrlîch
a quiver lordly

von wîzem helfenbeine,
of white ivory,

mit edelem gesteine,
with noble gems,

al umbe an den orten
all about at the edges

gevazt mit guoten borten,
set with good braids,

mit pheller wol underzogen.
with brocade well lined.

ieclîcher truoc einen bogen
each bore a bow

wol geworht hürnîn.
well wrought of-horn.

diu senewe was sîdîn,
the string was silken,

ir schilt von golde wol getân.
their shields of gold well made.

dâ diu buckel solde stân,
where the boss should stand,

dâ stuont ein grôzer almâtîn,
there stood a great diamond,

der niht liehter mohte sîn:
which not brighter might be:

des die recken beide jâhen.
of-that the warriors both said.

nâch den zwein sie komen sâhen
after the two they come saw

zwên ander in der selben zît.
two others at the same time.

die truogen den besten samît
they wore the best samite

der in der werlt mohte sîn.
which in the world might be.

ir kleider wâren sîdîn
their clothes were silken

diu si an ir lîbe hâten.
which they on their body had.

mit liehten goltdrâten
with bright gold-threads

was er genât vil spæhe,
was it sewn very skillfully,

mit berlîn vil wæhe
with pearls very finely

geworht hin nider an diu bein.
wrought thither down to the legs.

dâ von vil hêrlîchen schein
there from very lordly shone

manic edel stein vür unbetrogen.
many-a noble stone for undeceived.

ir beider kocher und ir bogen
of-them both quivers and their bows

die wâren tiure genuoc.
they were precious enough.

ietweder einen schilt truoc,
each a shield bore,

der was mit golde alsô beslagen
which was with gold so covered

daz iu daz nieman kan gesagen
that to-you that no-one can tell

ze gelouben mit fuogen
to believe with fitness

daz si an und umbe truogen,
what they on and about bore,

wie wol daz gezieret wære.
how well that adorned were.

ir zuht und ir gebære
their breeding and their bearing

die herren dûht vil lobelîch.
the lords seemed very praiseworthy.

sie wâren kranichen ouch gelîch.
they were to-cranes also alike.

Dise helde ziere
These heroes fine

wâren alle viere
were all four

nu in die burc gegangen.
now into the castle gone.

mit freuden bevangen
with joys seized

gienc nâch in ein schœne man.
went after them a beautiful man.

den selben sach man tragen an
the same saw one wear on

wât diu vil verre schein.
clothing which very far shone.

der truoc umbe sîniu bein
he wore about his legs

zwô hosen die wârn vil tiure
two hose which were very precious

und kosten rîche stiure,
and cost rich expense,

dar ane vil edeler steine,
there on many noble stones,

berlîn grôz und kleine,
pearls great and small,

mit golde verwieret.
with gold wired.

sus wârn die hosen gezieret
thus were the hose adorned

nider ûf die spitze vorn.
down to the point in-front.

dar ûf truoc er zwêne sporn,
there upon wore he two spurs,

die wâren rôt guldîn,
they were red golden,

sîn hemde wîz sîdîn,
his shirt white silken,

und einen roc bliât
and a coat of-bliaut

mit einer lîsten wol genât
with a border well sewn

von dem halse unz ûf die hende.
from the neck until to the hands.

von der ahsel nider unz an daz ende
from the shoulder down until to the end

wâren borten rîch und breit.
were braids rich and broad.

einen gurtel hâte er umbe geleit,
a girdle had he about laid,

der was mit golde wol durchslagen.
which was with gold well inlaid.

einen zirkel sâhens in ûf tragen,
a circlet saw-they him up wear,

der was vil wol gesteinet.
which was very well jeweled.

hie mite was daz gemeinet
here with was that meant

daz er des landes hete gewalt.
that he of-the land had power.

als ein swan was im gestalt
as a swan was to-him shaped

der hals und ouch daz houbet.
the neck and also the head.

daz wizzet und geloubet,
that know and believe,

ez was der künic von Grippiâ.
it was the king of Grippia.

zwêne giengen nâch im sâ,
two went after him at-once,

die truogen alsô guot gewant
they wore so good clothing

daz man niender bezzers vant.
that one nowhere better found.

die wâren vil hôchgeborn.
they were very high-born.

die hete der künic dar zuo erkorn,
them had the king there to chosen,

daz sie fuorten zwischen in
that they led between them

daz aller schœnste megetîn
the of-all most-beautiful maiden

daz ie wart geborn mê.
who ever became born more.

ir hût was wîzer dan der snê.
her skin was whiter than the snow.

nie schœner kint dorfte werden.
never more-beautiful child needed become.

ir hâr unz ûf die erden
her hair until to the earth

mohte wol gelangen.
might well reach.

mit golde bevangen
with gold encircled

was der juncfrouwen lîp.
was the young-lady's body.

ez wart nie dehein wîp
there became never any woman

ze dirre werlt baz getân.
in this world better made.

die sâhen sie trûric gân:
her saw they sad go:

ir weinen was unmæzlîch.
her weeping was measureless.

rehten liuten gelîch
to-real people alike

was ir antlütze gar.
was her face wholly.

ein pheller ir den schate bar,
a brocade to-her the shade bore,

der die hitze undervienc,
which the heat intercepted,

dâ diu frouwe under gienc.
where the lady under went.

den truogen ob ir vier man
it bore above her four men

an vier ruoten wol getân,
on four rods well made,

die wâren rôt guldîn.
they were red golden.

daz vil edel megetîn
the very noble maiden

was geborn von Indiâ.
was born of India.

der künic het sie geroubet dâ,
the king had her robbed there,

als ich iu dâ sagete ê.
as I to-you there told before.

ir was von jâmer starke wê.
to-her was from grief strongly woe.

des twanc sie êhaftiu nôt
of-that compelled her lawful distress

von kumber und ir vater tôt
from trouble and her father's death

und daz ir muoter bî im starp:
and that her mother by him died:

dâ von sie selbe ouch sint verdarp.
there from she self also afterward perished.

Dô sie sie alsô brâhten dan,
When they her so brought thence,
dô dranc wîp unde man
then pressed women and men
nâch in zuo der bürge tor.
after them to the castle's gate.
dâ beleip dô nieman vor,
there remained then no-one before,
weder die alden noch die jungen.
neither the old nor the young.
in ir wîse sie dô sungen
in their manner they then sang
einen wunderlîchen lût.
a wondrous sound.
hin fuorten sie die brût
thither led they the bride
in ein vil wünneclîchez gadem.
into a very delightful chamber.
vil michel was der kradem,
very great was the noise,
dô sich huop diu hôchgezît.
when itself raised the wedding-feast.
daz gesidel was harte wît,
the seats were very wide,
schœne unde wol getân.
beautiful and well made.
dar în gienc der künic sân
there in went the king at-once
mit der schœnen juncvrouwen.
with the beautiful young-lady.
dâ mohte man jâmer schouwen,
there might one grief behold,

dô sie alles um sich sach
when she all about herself saw

und ir nieman zuo sprach
and to-her no-one to spoke

den sie vernemen kunde.
whom she understand could.

des vielen ir alle stunde
of-that fell to-her all hours

die trähene von den ougen
the tears from the eyes

offenlîch und tougen
openly and secretly

nider ûf die bruste,
down upon the breast,

wan sie niht freuden luste.
for she not of-joys lusted.

ir wât was sal die sie truoc.
her clothing was dirty which she wore.

sie hâte jâmers genuoc.
she had of-grief enough.

Swie sie liuten glîch wâren,
However they to-people alike were,

ir sprechen und ir gebâren
their speaking and their bearing

kunde disiu niht verstân.
could this-one not understand.

sie hôrte wîp unde man
she heard women and men

schrîen nâch der kraniche site.
cry after the cranes' custom.

waz sie bediuten dâ mite,
what they mean there with,

daz ist mir vil unbekant.
that is to-me very unknown.

man sach sie zeigen mit der hant,
one saw them point with the hand,

als noch liute undr ein ander tuont.
as still people among one other do.

der truhsæze vor dem tische stuont
the steward before the table stood

der dem herren die sedele gap.
who to-the lord the seats gave.

in sîner hende was ein stap
in his hand was a staff

der die liute sitzen hiez.
which the people sit bade.

nieman er belîben liez,
no-one he remain let,

ern schüefe in truhsæzen dar
unless-he made to-them stewards there

die ir mit dienste næmen war
who of-them with service took heed

und die in solden schenken.
and who to-them should pour.

swaz ieman mohte erdenken,
whatever anyone might devise,

des vant man den vollen dâ.
of-that found one the full there.

dô gienc der künic von Grippiâ
then went the king of Grippia

hêrlîch zuo sînem tische gân.
lordly to his table go.

die juncvrouwen wol getân
the young-lady well made

sazt man an sîne sîten dar.
set one at his side there.

diu was alsô jâmervar
she was so grief-colored
daz sie freuden niht gezam.
that to-her joys not befitted.
der künic mit ir wazzer nam
the king with her water took
ûz guldîn becken swære.
out-of golden basins heavy.
vil hôhe kamerære,
very high chamberlains,
die hôchsten von dem lande,
the highest of the land,
in rîchem gewande,
in rich clothing,
die knieten unde buten dar
they knelt and offered there
die twehelen vil wîz gevar:
the towels very white colored:
si gebârten zühteclîche,
they bore-themselves courteously,
dâ der künic rîche
where the king rich
ze tische mit der briute saz.
at table with the bride sat.
in vil manic goltvaz
into very many-a gold-vessel
gôz man met unde wîn.
poured one mead and wine.
dâ stuonden schüzzel silberîn
there stood dishes of-silver
mit maniger hande lîpnar.
with many-a kind victuals.
dô nam der truhsæze war,
then took the steward heed,

der was hübesch unde wîse,
who was courtly and wise,

daz verzert was diu spîse.
that consumed was the food.

des nam sie besunder
of-that took them separately

alle michel wunder,
all great wonder,

wer sie hæte vertân.
who it had used-up.

dô hiez der truhsæze dan
then bade the steward thence

ze kuchen balde springen
to kitchen quickly spring

und ander spîse bringen:
and other food bring:

der wart getragen dar genuoc,
of-it became carried there enough,

unde nieman gewuoc
and no-one mentioned

wâ diu hin wære komen.
where it thither were come.

sie wânden sie hæte genomen
they believed it had taken

ir selber eigen diet.
their self own folk.

si versâhen sich der geste niet
they suspected themselves of-the guests not

die bî in wâren in der stat.
who by them were in the city.

swie sie nieman dar bat
however them no-one thither bade

zuo der wirtschefte komen,
to the feast come,

iedoch hâtens dâ genomen
yet had-they there taken

ir spîse von in ungeladet
their food from them uninvited

und hâten schône und wol gebadet
and had beautifully and well bathed

als ez got von himel gap.
as it God from heaven gave.

daz frumte manigen sît inz grap.
that brought many afterward into-the grave.

Die liute tâten dâ wol schîn
The people made there well visible

daz sie met unde wîn
that they mead and wine

heten ze gebenne genuoc.
had to give enough.

balde man dô vür truoc
quickly one then before carried

fleisch kæse und fische.
meat cheese and fishes.

dô rihte man die tische
then prepared one the tables

den gesten in dem wîten sal.
for-the guests in the wide hall.

man gap wazzer über al
one gave water over all

und hiez sie an die sedele gân.
and bade them to the seats go.

dar inne was dô nieman
there in was then no-one

weder sô træge noch sô laz,
neither so sluggish nor so slack,

ern twüege über ein guldîn vaz.
unless-he washed over a golden vessel.

dô sich der kreftige magen
when itself the mighty force

aller hâte getwagen,
all had washed,

dô giengen sie mit êren
then went they with honors

vür den künic hêren:
before the king lordly:

beide arme und rîche
both poor and rich

nigen gezogenlîche
bowed courteously

dem künige ê sie sæzen.
to-the king before they sat.

dô kâmen truhsæzen
then came stewards

und teilten vür die tische sich.
and divided before the tables themselves.

nie wirtschaft wart sô lobelich
never feast became so praiseworthy

von der ie man noch vernam.
of which ever one still heard.

man gap dâ wilt unde zam.
one gave there wild and tame.

alle die dâ sâzen
all who there sat

trunken und âzen
drank and ate

alles des ir lîp gezam,
all of-that their body befitted,

ân diu frouwe minnesam:
except the lady lovely:

diu wolde niht enbîzen.
she would not taste.

daz dorfte ir nieman verwîzen,
that needed her no-one reproach,

ob sie es übele luste.
if her it ill lusted.

als dicke er sie kuste,
as often he her kissed,

den snabel stiez er ir in den munt.
the beak thrust he to-her into the mouth.

solh minne was ir ê unkunt
such love was to-her before unknown

die wîl sie was in Indiâ.
the while she was in India.

dô muoses sich in Grippiâ
then must-she herself in Grippia

sô getâner minne nieten
of-so made love take-her-fill

under unkunden dieten.
among unknown folks.

Man muost der edelen frouwen
One must of-the noble lady

ir liehten ougen schouwen
her bright eyes behold

von weinen trüebe unde rôt.
from weeping dim and red.

diu enmohte ir starken nôt
she might her strong distress

leider nieman dâ gesagen.
alas to-no-one there tell.

do vernam ir weinen und ir klagen
then heard her weeping and her lament

Ernst der fürste hêre.
Ernst the prince lordly.

ez erbarmte in vil sêre
it moved-to-pity him very sorely

und den grâven sînen man,
and the count his man,

daz diu frouwe wol getân
that the lady well made

undr in allen nieman sach
among them all no-one saw

dem sie klagete ir ungemach
to-whom she lamented her hardship

von ir starkem leide.
from her strong sorrow.

daz erbarmte sie dô beide.
that moved-to-pity them then both.

dô der herzoge ir jâmer sach,
when the duke her grief saw,

wider den grâven er dô sprach
toward the count he then spoke

'möht wir mit keinen sinnen
'(if)-might we with any wits

gehelfen von hinnen
help from hence

disem minneclîchem wîbe,
this lovely woman,

sô möhte mînem lîbe
so might to-my body

nimmer lieber geschehen.
never dearer happen.

ich hân ir jâmer wol gesehen.
I have her grief well seen.

sie muoz mich riuwen immer mê.
she must me rue ever more.

ez tuot mir ame herzen wê
it does to-me at-the heart woe

daz sie sich alsô sêre quelt.
that she herself so sorely torments.

nu gedenke, tiwerlîcher helt,
now think, precious hero,

wie wir ir ze staten stân.
how we to-her in stead stand.

sol disiu frouwe wol getân
shall this lady well made

in disem ellende
in this exile

belîben an ir ende,
remain to her end,

daz wære ein wunderlîch geschiht.
that were a wondrous happening.

sie vernimt ir sprâche niht:
she understands their speech not:

sie kan ir sprâche niht verstân.
she can their speech not understand.

diuhte ez iuch nu wol getân,
(if)-seemed it you now well done,

sô wære ez wol der wille mîn,
so were it well the will my,

und liezenz an unsern trehtîn,
and left-it to our Lord,

daz wir slîchen hin ze tal
that we should-creep thither to dale

und zuo in springen in den sal
and to them spring into the hall

mit den swerten under sie.
with the swords among them.

ê sie sich dort oder hie
before they themselves there or here

immer ze wer gerihtet hân,
ever to defense prepared have,

wir haben under in getân
we have among them done

den mort und ouch den schaden
the murder and also the harm

des sie sich nimmer mugen entladen.
of-which they themselves never may clear.

wir slahens als daz vihe nider.
we strike-them as the cattle down.

dâ sint sie ungewarnet wider.
there are they unwarned against.

wir trenkens mit ir bluotes flôz.
we drench-them with their blood's flow.

sie habent niht wan ir geschôz:
they have nothing but their shot:

waz schadet daz unsern ringen?
what harms that our rings?

dâ mit suln wir dringen
there with shall we press

dâ sie dem künige sitzet bî
where she to-the king sits by

und machen sie der angest frî.
and make her of-the fear free.

wir slahen den künic tôt
we strike the king dead

und lœsen sie von dirre nôt,
and release her from this distress,

dise frouwen wol getân:
this lady well made:

die bringen wir vil wol dan,
her bring we very well thence,

ê daz sie komen ze wer.
before that they come to defense.

ob sie noch hæten grœzer her,
if they still had greater host,

wir sîn vür daz burctor.
we are before the castle-gate.

dâ komen wir ân ir danc vor.
there come we without their thanks before.

der swert wel wir gewalden
of-the swords will we wield

und unsern lîp behalden
and our body keep

unz ze unsern helfære.
until to our helpers.

nu solt du, degen mære,
now shalt thou, thane famous,

volgen mînem râte,
follow my counsel,

daz wir hin în drâte
that we thither in quickly

springen, als ich geredet hân:
spring, as I said have:

mich riwet diu frouwe wol getân.'
me rues the lady well made.'

Wetzel counsels waiting until the feast breaks up. When the king withdraws to his chamber with the princess, one of his followers spies the two knights in their mail, and the crane-folk stab her with their beaks. Ernst and Wetzel kill the king and his counselors, all but the informer, who escapes and spreads the alarm; the dying princess thanks Ernst, tells her story, and dies, and they lay her on a bier and go out to fight.

Der grâve sprach 'fürste hêre,
The count spoke 'prince lordly,

nu volge mîner lêre
now follow my teaching

und lâ dir niht sô gâch sîn.
and let to-thee not so hasty be.

ich tuon doch den willen dîn,
I do yet the will thy,

swaz mir dâ von mac geschehen.
whatever to-me there from may happen.

du hâst ez selbe wol gesehen,
thou hast it self well seen,

hie ist michel volc inne.
here is great folk inside.

wir bedürfen guoter sinne
we need good wits

daz wir behalden hie daz leben.
that we keep here the life.

ist daz wir den strît heben,
(if)-is that we the strife raise,

die wîl sie alsô umbe gân,
the while they so about go,

sie slahent die frouwen wol getân
they strike the lady well made

under unsern handen.
under our hands.

ê sies uns nâch ir schanden
before they-her to-us after their shame

liezen hinnen bringen,
let hence bring,

sien ruochent mit welhen dingen
they-not care with which things

sies scheiden von dem lîbe.
they-her part from the life.

wir mugen dem schœnen wîbe
we may to-the beautiful woman

verre baz ze staten komen.
far better in stead come.

alse wir daz haben vernomen,
when we that have perceived,

sô sie von den tischen stên,
when they from the tables stand,

so beginnet der künic gên
so begins the king to-go

zuo den gesten in den sal,
to the guests into the hall,

und rûment die würmelâge über al
and leave the serpent-place over all

die helde gemeinlîche.
the heroes in-common.

sô mugen wir gemellîche
so may we gladly

in die kemenâten gân
into the chamber go

unde slahen den künic sân:
and strike the king at-once:

des kan er sich niht ernern.
of-that can he himself not save.

weln sie sich unser danne wern,
(if)-will they themselves against-us then defend,

ir wirt manic von uns erhouwen,
of-them becomes many-a-one by us hewn,

unde nemen dann die frouwen:
and take then the lady:

die bringen wir von hinnen.
her bring we from hence.

ê sie des werden innen,
before they of-that become aware,

sô sîn wir vor der bürge tor.
so are we before the castle's gate.

dâ koment uns ze helfe vor
there come to-us to help before

die unsern vartgesellen
the our travel-companions

mit manlîchen ellen.
with manly valor.

wir gên über daz gevilde
we go over the field

und nemen sie under die schilde:
and take her under the shields:

sô bringe wirs in daz schef hin,
so bring we-her into the ship thither,

mich entriege mîn sin.'
unless-me deceive my wit.'

Des râtes wart der fürste frô.
Of-the counsel became the prince glad.

vil kûme erbeiten sie dô
very hardly waited they then

daz der künic hâte gezzen.
that the king had eaten.

die vor im wâren gesezzen,
who before him were seated,
die stuonden ûf über al.
they stood up over all.
der künic gienc in den sal.
the king went into the hall.
vil manic wol geslahter man
very many-a well bred man
giengen vür den künic stân.
went before the king stand.
sie tanzten unde sungen,
they danced and sang,
sie spilten unde sprungen.
they played and sprang.
dâ was ruofen unde schrîen
there was calling and crying
alse kraniche unde wîen.
as cranes and kites.
dâ mite êrten sie die brût.
there with honored they the bride.
alsô michel was der lût
so great was the noise
in der bürge über al,
in the castle over all,
si gehôrten nie sô grôzen schal.
they heard never so great clamor.
do die grippiânischen liute
when the Grippian people
getâten vor der briute
did before the bride
alsô maniger hande spil,
so many-a kind play,
beide wunderlîch unt vil,
both wondrous and much,

swie nâhe sie dem künige saz,
however near she to-the king sat,

si gehabte sich doch lützel baz,
she fared herself yet little better,

wan ir jâmer was sô grôz
for her grief was so great

daz es den rîchen künec verdrôz.
that it the rich king vexed.

daz volc hiez er rûmen sân:
the folk bade he leave at-once:

er wolt ze kemenâten gân.
he would to chamber go.

die dâ geschaffet wâren zuo,
those-who there appointed were to,

die brâhten die frouwen duo
they brought the lady then

nâch im in daz schœne gadem.
after him into the beautiful chamber.

im volgte nâch grôzer kradem
him followed after great noise

von gesange al vür daz palas.
of song all before the palace.

al daz in der bürge was
all that in the castle was

daz zefuor after stete hie.
that went-apart along places here.

ieclîch ze herberge gie,
each to lodging went,

als noch dicke ze hove geschiht.
as still often at court happens.

si versâhen sich des schaden niht
they suspected themselves of-the harm not

der in doch sider dâ geschach.
which to-them yet afterward there happened.

sie schuofen alle ir gemach
they made all their rest

und giengen an ir gwarheit:
and went to their safety:

des kâmens sît in arbeit.
of-that came-they afterward into toil.

Daz volc was allez dan gegân,
The folk was all thence gone,

beide wîp unde man,
both women and men,

dô man sie von hove treip,
when one them from court drove,

daz dâ nieman beleip
that there no-one remained

wan zwelf sîner hœchsten man
except twelve of-his highest men

die der künic muose bî im hân
whom the king must by him have

durch wîsen und durch râten.
for guiding and for counseling.

die wârn in der kemnâten,
they were in the chamber,

dô man die brût enkleiden solde.
when one the bride undress should.

einer des küniges holde
one of-the king's followers

kam in den winkel hin gegân
came into the corner thither walking

und sach dise zwêne stân
and saw these two stand

in ir halsbergen gar.
in their hauberks wholly.

als er ir dâ wart gewar,
when he them there became aware,

er kêrte wider drâte
he turned back quickly

in die kemenâte.
into the chamber.

er begunde offenlîche jehen,
he began openly to-say,

er hæte zwêne man gesehen.
he had two men seen.

dô wânden die von Grippiâ,
then believed those of Grippia,

sie hæten in von Indiâ
they had them from India

vîentlîch gevolget dar.
hostilely followed thither.

des erkâmen sie gar.
of-that took-fright they wholly.

ane liefen sie dô sân
on ran they then at-once

dise frouwen wol getân:
this lady well made:

an ir sie sich râchen.
on her they themselves avenged.

mit den snebelen sie sie stâchen
with the beaks they her stabbed

allenthalben durch den lîp.
everywhere through the body.

dô schrei daz vil edele wîp
then cried the very noble woman

in einer vil lûten stimme.
in a very loud voice.

des erschrâken vil grimme
of-that took-fright very grimly

dise herren beide.
these lords both.

dô wart in harte leide,
then became to-them very grievous,

dem herzogen und sînem man.
to-the duke and his man.

er sprach 'wir hân ze lange gestân:
he spoke 'we have too long stood:

sie schrîet von grôzer nôt.
she cries from great distress.

sie habent der frouwen den tôt
they have to-the lady the death

in dem gademe getân.
in the chamber done.

nu sol diu râche über sie gân
now shall the vengeance over them go

vil wunderlîche schiere.'
very wondrously soon.'

dô sprungen die helde ziere
then sprang the heroes fine

gên der kemenâte.
toward the chamber.

dâ liezen sie vil drâte
there let they very quickly

die liehten ekkel schînen.
the bright steel shine.

den künic mit den sînen
the king with the his

valten sie mit swerten.
felled they with swords.

des tôdes sie dô werten
of-the death they then granted

swaz in der kemenâten was,
whatever in the chamber was,

daz ir keiner genas
that of-them none survived

ern müese vor in ligen tôt.
unless-he must before them lie dead.

wan einer gnas mit grôzer nôt,
except one survived with great distress,

der sie gemeldet hâte.
who them reported had.

der entran niht ze spâte,
he escaped not too late,

do er erhôrt der swerte klanc.
when he heard the swords' clang.

hinder in er ûz der tür spranc
behind them he out-of the door sprang

daz er niht urloubes von in nam.
that he not leave from them took.

mit dem lîbe er kûme entran.
with the life he hardly escaped.

Disiu mære brâhte dan
These tidings brought thence

der ûz der kemenâte entran
he-who out-of the chamber escaped

in die burc über al.
into the castle over all.

dô huop sich ein vil grôzer schal
then rose itself a very great clamor

von dem volke in der stat.
from the folk in the city.

der herzoge über die frouwen trat
the duke over the lady stepped

und gruozt daz hêrlîche wîp.
and greeted the lordly woman.

er sprach ‘dîn wætlîcher lîp
he spoke ‘thy comely body

der riuwet mich vil sêre.
it rues me very sorely.

ich enwil ouch nimmer mêre
I will also never more

in mînem herzen dich verklagen.
in my heart thee lament-away.

ez wirt in weiz got niht vertragen
it becomes to-them knows God not borne

daz sie an dir hânt begân.
what they on thee have committed.

nu sage mir, frouwe wol getân,
now tell me, lady well made,

ob dich ieman müge ernern.
whether thee anyone may save.

wil mir got daz heil beschern
(if)-will to-me God the luck bestow

daz du genesest, megetîn,
that thou survivest, maiden,

des soltu âne zwîvel sîn,
of-that shalt-thou without doubt be,

ich enbringe dich ze lande
I bring thee to land

mit manigem wîgande
with many-a fighter

die ich in mînem schiffe hân.
whom I in my ship have.

solt aber du, frouwe wol getân,
shalt but thou, lady well made,

alsô verliesen dînen lîp,
so lose thy life,

sô riche ich dich, vil edel wîp,
so avenge I thee, very noble woman,

noch hiute an dînen vînden sô
still today on thy enemies so

daz sie immer sîn unfrô
that they ever be unglad

die wîle daz sie mugen leben.
the while that they may live.

in wirt noch hiut der lôn gegeben
to-them becomes still today the reward given

von uns ellenden,
by us exiles,

ê daz wir widerwenden,
before that we back-turn,

daz sie ez immer mugen sagen
that they it ever may tell

und [allen] ir nâchkomen klagen.'
and [to-all] their descendants lament.'

Des küniges tohter von Indiâ
The king's daughter of India

lac vil jâmerlîche dâ
lay very lamentably there

trûric in grôzem sêre.
sad in great pain.

dô mohte sie niht mêre,
then might she not more,

wan ir nâhete der tôt.
for to-her neared the death.

in dem heizen bluote rôt
in the hot blood red

lac bewollen daz megetîn.
lay soiled the maiden.

wie kunde ir immer wirs gesîn?
how could to-her ever worse be?

sie twanc der grôze smerze.
her compelled the great pain.

do begunde ir daz herze
then began to-her the heart

bresten in dem lîbe.
to-break in the body.

dem vil edelem wîbe
to-the very noble woman

was ir kraft worden swach.
was her strength become weak.

zuo dem fürsten sie dô sprach
to the prince she then spoke

'got lône dir der arbeit
'God reward thee the toil

die du, recke vil gemeit,
which thou, warrior very merry,

durch mich hâst bestanden
for me hast withstood

in disen fremden landen
in these foreign lands

alsô angestlîchen.
so perilously.

des lobe ich got den rîchen,
of-that praise I God the rich,

swie ez nû umb mich ergât,
however it now about me goes,

daz er mir gesendet hât
that he to-me sent has

dîne helfe und dînen trôst,
thy help and thy comfort,

daz du mich, recke, hâst erlôst
that thou me, warrior, hast released

von manicvalden wêwen,
from manifold woes,

dar inne ich ze êwen
there in I to eternity

immer müese sîn gewesen.
ever must be been.

vür wâr und solde ich nu genesen,
for true if should I now survive,

daz mir daz got wolde geben,
that to-me that God would give,

und solde ich danne langer leben,
and should I then longer live,

des möhtestu immer frô sîn.
of-that mightest-thou ever glad be.

gehülf dir unser trähtîn
(if)-helped thee our Lord

daz du mich bræhtst in Indiâ,
that thou me broughtest to India,

woldestu danne bestân dâ,
wouldst-thou then stay there,

ich tæt dich, edel recke balt,
I would-make thee, noble warrior bold,

hôher rîcheit gewalt
of-high richness power

und maniger grôzer êre.
and of-many-a great honor.

du würdest immer mêre
thou wouldst-become ever more

aller künige genôz.
of-all kings peer.

dîn rîchtuom würde alsô grôz
thy riches would-become so great

daz du wol möhtest gebieten
that thou well mightest command

und dich maniger freuden nieten
and thyself of-many joys take-fill

mit kurzwîl maniger hande.
with pastime of-many kinds.

ob manigem rîchem lande
over many-a rich land

müesest du herre sîn:
must thou lord be:

ez solde allez wesen dîn,
it should all be thine,

als ich dir gesagt hân.
as I to-thee told have.

mînem vater was undertân
to-my father was subject

vil manic helt vermezzen.
very many-a hero daring.

al die im wârn gesezzen,
all who to-him were settled,

grâven unde herzogen,
counts and dukes,

dienten im vür unbetrogen
served him for undeceived

mit vil grôzen êren.
with very great honors.

swar er sie wolde kêren,
whither he them would turn,

dâ hulfens im ze sîner nôt.
there helped-they him in his distress.

dô gap er in daz golt rôt:
then gave he to-them the gold red:

des muose er in allen
of-that must he to-them all

von schulden wol gevallen
by right well please

die wîle daz er mohte leben.
the while that he might live.

sît wart im daz unheil geben
afterward became to-him the misfortune given

von dem künic von Grippiâ.
by the king of Grippia.

der suochte in mit den sînen dâ,
he sought him with the his there,

ûf dem mer er uns zuo kam,
on the sea he us to came,

dâ er im den lîp genam
where he from-him the life took

und der lieben muoter mîn
and from-the dear mother my

und allem dem gesinde sîn
and from-all the household his

daz mit im in dem schiffe was,
which with him in the ship was,

daz dâ nieman genas,
that there no-one survived,

weder grôz noch kleine,
neither great nor small,

wan ich alterseine.
except I quite-alone.

sus brâhten sie mich dannen sint.
thus brought they me thence afterward.

mîn vater hâte kein kint
my father had no child

wan mich, dô er wart erslagen.
except me, when he became slain.

von rehte sol dâ nieman tragen
by right shall there no-one bear

krône wan daz houbet mîn:
crown except the head my:

des solt du wol gewis sîn.
of-that shalt thou well certain be.

daz ist leider anders gwant.
that is alas otherwise turned.

ich muoz diz ellende lant
I must this foreign land

bûwen unz an den suontac,
inhabit until to the judgment-day,

wan ich niht langer leben mac.
for I not longer live may.

mir ist doch lieber der tôt
to-me is yet dearer the death

denne daz ich solhe nôt
than that I such distress

müese lîden mîn leben.
must suffer my life.

got ruoche dir daz glücke geben
God deign to-thee the fortune give

daz du wol wider komest ze lande.'
that thou well back comest to land.'

dô neic sie dem wîgande.
then bowed she to-the fighter.

zehant dô sie daz wort verlie,
at-once when she the word let,

diu sêle ir ûz dem munde gie.
the soul to-her out-of the mouth went.

Den herzogen und den man sîn
The duke and the man his

rou daz schœne megetîn.
rued the beautiful maiden.

vor jâmer und vor leide
for grief and for sorrow

weinden sie dô beide,
wept they then both,

wan ir tôt tet in wê.
for her death did to-them woe.

dô leiten sie sie an den rê
then laid they her on the bier

die juncvrouwen minneclîch.
the young-lady lovely.

einen pheller von golde rîch
a brocade of gold rich

leitens über daz megetîn,
laid-they over the maiden,

und bâten unsern trähtîn,
and begged our Lord,

al der werlde schephære,
of-all the world creator,

daz er ir genædic wære
that he to-her gracious were

durch sîn diemuote.
through his humility.

mit erbermdem muote
with merciful mind

giengen die recken drâte
went the warriors quickly

ûz der kemenâte,
out-of the chamber,

dâ diu nôt ergangen was,
where the distress happened was,

hin ûz vür daz palas,
thither out before the palace,

in die burc vür die tür.
into the castle before the door.

die schilde sazten sie dâ vür,
the shields set they there before,

wan sie strîten gerten.
for they strife desired.

mit den scharpfen swerten
with the sharp swords

woldens prîs erwerben
would-they prize win

oder in strîte ersterben
or in strife die

durch die frouwen wol getân.
for the lady well made.

alsô giengen sie dô dan,
so went they then thence,

die edelen wîgande,
the noble fighters,

verborgen under rande.
hidden under rim.

XIII · ESCAPE FROM GRIPPIA

The castle gates are shut and the streets crowded with crane-folk; Ernst and Wetzel hold out with their backs to a wall until their companions break in with the banner. Between the castle and the ship a mounted host shoots at them, five hundred of Ernst's men fall, and the rest escape by sea, pursued in vain, while the crane-folk bury their king. On the twelfth day the voyagers sight the mountain Magnes, its ships' bleached masts standing like a forest.

Nu wâren in der bürge tor
Now were in the castle's gate

beide hinden unde vor
both behind and before

mit volke gar vergangen.
with folk wholly blocked.

sie wâren umbevangen
they were surrounded

mit den liuten von Grippiâ.
with the people of Grippia.

die strâzen wâren vol dâ
the streets were full there

in der bürge über al.
in the castle over all.

dô wart vil freislîch der schal,
then became very fearsome the clamor,

do si liefen in zegegene.
when they ran to-them against.

dô mohten dise degene
then might these thanes

niender komen ûz der stat.
nowhere come out-of the place.

mit den swerten sie daz phat
with the swords they the path

durch sie muosen houwen.
through them must hew.

dâ moht man wunder schouwen
there might one wonder behold

an der seltsænen diete.
on the strange folk.

die freislîchen miete
the fearsome pay

buten sie den helden dâ.
offered they to-the heroes there.

die schilde nâmen sie sâ
the shields took they at-once

vil manlîche vür sich.
very manfully before themselves.

dô sprungen die helde hêrlich
then sprang the heroes lordly

mit ellen under dise magen.
with valor among this force.

dâ wart mit nîde geslagen
there became with hatred struck

von in manic swertswanc.
by them many-a sword-swing.

ir helse smal unde lanc
their necks narrow and long

ir beider swert vil wênic miten.
of-them both swords very little avoided.

ir wart von in sô vil versniten
of-them became by them so many cut

daz es grôz wunder was.
that it great wonder was.

vil wênic ir genas.
very few of-them survived.

swâ sie hin geneicten,
wherever they thither turned,

die helde wol erzeicten
the heroes well showed

daz sie sie lützel sparten,
that they them little spared,

swer des wolde warten,
whoever of-that would watch,

daz ir vil dô starp.
that of-them many then died.

vil maniger von in verdarp,
very many-a-one by them perished,

der in kam ze mâze.
who to-them came in measure.

sie hiuwen eine strâze
they hewed a street

vaste unz an daz burctor.
hard until to the castle-gate.

dâ beleip vil maniger vor,
there remained very many-a-one before,

ê daz sies durch liezen gân.
before that they-them through let go.

diu burctor wâren zuo getân,
the castle-gates were shut done,

mit rigelen beslozzen.
with bolts locked.

dâ von die unverdrozzen
there from the unwearied-ones

muosen lîden grôze nôt:
must suffer great distress:

des lac vil maniger vor in tôt.
of-that lay very many-a-one before them dead.

Dô kêrten die helde tiure
Then turned the heroes precious

die rucke an ein miure
the backs to a wall

und schirmden ir verhes.
and shielded their life.

sleht und twerhes
straight and across

wertens sich dô beide.
defended-they themselves then both.

daz wart des tages ze leide
that became of-the day to sorrow

vil manegem in kurzen wîlen.
to-very many in short whiles.

mit bogen und mit phîlen
with bows and with arrows

giengens in allenthalben zuo.
went-they to-them on-all-sides to.

sie mohten in anders duo
they might to-them otherwise then

nie getuon keinen schaden.
never do any harm.

ir schilde wurden dô geladen,
their shields became then loaded,

daz sie sie kûme getruogen.
that they them hardly bore.

mit den swerten sies ab sluogen
with the swords they-them off struck

und trâtens under die füeze nider.
and trod-them under the feet down.

alsô werten sie sich sider
so defended they themselves afterward

daz sie vil manigen sluogen tôt.
that they very many-a-one struck dead.

alsô kreftic wart ir nôt
so mighty became their distress

daz si vorhten niht dannen komen.
that they feared not thence come.

nu heten den strît ouch vernomen
now had the strife also heard

ûf dem kiele ir geverten.
on the keel their companions.

mit scharpfen swerten herten
with sharp swords hard

kâmen die helde ziere
came the heroes fine

in ze helfe harte schiere
to-them to help very soon

mit dem vanen vür daz burctor.
with the banner before the castle-gate.

unlange stuonden sie dâ vor:
not-long stood they there before:

sie hiuwen ûf die porten.
they hewed up the gates.

mit den eckels orten
with the steel's points

sô trâten sie wider in
so stepped they back in

verre durch die burc hin.
far through the castle thither.

des was den edelen recken nôt:
of-that was to-the noble warriors need:

sie wæren anders beide tôt.
they were otherwise both dead.

in kam helfe unde trôst:
to-them came help and comfort:

des wart des lîbes erlôst
of-that became of-the life released

in dem sturme manic man.
in the assault many-a man.

oben an die wer stân
above on the defense stand

muosen sie entrinnen.
must they escape.

sie wurfen von den zinnen
they threw from the battlements

mit steinen vil swinde.
with stones very swiftly.

der herzoge unde sîn gesinde
the duke and his household

mohten niht langer dô genesen.
might not longer then survive.

dô liezens alliu dinc wesen
then let-they all things be

und schieden von in âne schaden.
and parted from them without harm.

diu kurzewîle und daz baden
the pastime and the bathing

was in worden swære.
was to-them become heavy.

dô giengen die helde mære
then went the heroes famous

âne ir danc dannen
without their thanks thence

frôlîch mit ir mannen
joyfully with their men

gegen ir schiffe zuo dem mer.
toward their ship to the sea.

dô het der herzoge und sîn her
then had the duke and his host

überkomen ein michel herzeleit.
gotten a great heart's-sorrow.

doch litens sît grœzer arbeit.
yet suffered-they afterward greater toil.

dô sie zem schiffe solden gân,
when they to-the ship should go,

dô kâmen die vil küenen man
then came the very bold men

in ein vil angestlîche nôt:
into a very perilous distress:

do beleip ir dâ maniger tôt.
then remained of-them there many-a-one dead.

Do der herzoge ûz der bürge kam,
When the duke out-of the castle came,

daz er dâ niht schaden nam,
that he there no harm took,

als ich iu ê hân geseit,
as I to-you before have said,

dô gienc der jungelinc gemeit
then went the youth merry

gegen sîner selde.
toward his dwelling.

dô wolde er sîne helde
then would he his heroes

wider bringen ûf daz mer.
back bring onto the sea.

dô sâhens ein vil kreftic her
then saw-they a very mighty host

der herren von dem lande.
of-the lords of the land.

ez wâren wîgande
they were fighters

und wolden die brût hân gesehen.
and would the bride have seen.

do begunden die kristen jehen,
then began the Christians to-say,

ir wærn zwelf tûsent oder mêr:
of-them were twelve thousand or more:

die wâren rîch unde hêr.
they were rich and lordly.

die sâhens gein in rîten
them saw-they toward them ride

ûf den schœnsten ravîten
on the most-beautiful horses

die in der werlde mohten sîn.
which in the world might be.

sie fuorten bogen hürnîn.
they carried bows of-horn.

ir kocher und ir schilde
their quivers and their shields

wârn geworht wilde.
were wrought wondrously.

ir schar was lanc unde breit.
their troop was long and broad.

dô dise helde gemeit
when these heroes merry

gên ir schiffe solden gâhen,
toward their ship should hasten,

ane rîten sie sie sâhen
on ride they them saw

und erhuoben einen grimmen strît:
and raised a grim strife:

des verlôs manc den lîp sît.
of-that lost many-a-one the life afterward.

Dô der fürste vil gemeit
When the prince very merry

dise schar alsô breit
this troop so broad

dort her zuo im rîten sach,
there hither to him ride saw,

zuo den sînen er dô sprach
to the his he then spoke

'wie nû, lieben friunde mîn?
'how now, dear friends my?

hiute sult ir lâzen schîn
today shall you let visible

daz ir wol türret vehten.
that you well dare fight.

gelîch vil guoten knehten
like very good knights

sul wir mit strîte an sie komen.
shall we with strife at them come.

nu si uns die strâze hânt benomen
now they from-us the street have taken

dâ wir ze schiffe solden gân,
where we to ship should go,

nu sult ir zuo dem vanen stân
now shall you by the banner stand

unde wert iuch manlîche.
and defend yourselves manfully.

hie sul wir daz himelrîche
here shall we the heavenly-kingdom

koufen mit dem lebene.
buy with the life.

ez hât nieman vergebene
there has no-one for-nothing

die himelischen êre.
the heavenly honor.

da gebrist ouch nimmer mêre
there lacks also never more

freude diu niht zegât
joy which not passes

und ouch nimmer ende hât:
and also never end has:

daz sul wir dienen hiute.
that shall we earn today.

diz sint ungetoufte liute
these are unbaptized people

unde ahtent niht ûf got.
and heed not upon God.

ezn sî mîns trähtîns gebot
unless-it be my Lord's command

daz wir hie suln belîben,
that we here shall remain,

sie mugen uns niht vertrîben
they can us not drive

verrer danne zuo dem mer.
farther than to the sea.

sie habent ein kreftigez her:
they have a mighty host:

daz ist ze bîle kein guot.
that is at need no good.

nu sult ir alle iuwern muot
now shall you all your mind

wenden an unsern trähtîn,
turn to our Lord,

daz er uns gnædic ruoche sîn
that he to-us gracious deign be

und uns helfe ûz dirre nôt.
and us help out-of this distress.

helde, nu vürhtet niht den tôt:
heroes, now fear not the death:

wir sîn durch got ûz komen.
we are for God out come.

wirt uns hie der lîp benomen,
(if)-becomes from-us here the life taken,

wir sîn doch vor in genesen.
we are yet from them saved.

deste küener sult ir wesen
the bolder shall you be

und strîtet ûf den gotes trôst
and fight upon the God's comfort

der uns vil dicke hât erlôst
who us very often has released

und ûz angest genomen.
and out-of fear taken.

welnt sie uns sô nâhe komen
(if)-will they to-us so near come

daz wir sie erreichen mugen,
that we them reach may,

die wîle uns diu swert tugen,
the while to-us the swords avail,

ir wirt sô vil von uns erslagen
of-them becomes so many by us slain

daz sie ez nimmer mugen verklagen.'
that they it never may lament-away.'

Dô der vil edele wîgant
When the very noble fighter

sîn recken hâte alsô gemant,
his warriors had so urged,

niht langer sie dô beiten.
not longer they then waited.

ze strît sie sich bereiten
for strife they themselves readied

als küenen helden gezam.
as to-bold heroes befitted.

der herzoge selbe den vanen nam
the duke self the banner took

und wîste sîn gesinde.
and guided his household.

gegen in harte swinde
toward them very swiftly

wart gesprenget manic ravît.
became spurred many-a horse.

alsô erhuoben sie den strît.
so raised they the strife.

sie hâten vil wîte erzogen
they had very wide drawn

mit geschôze manigen starken bogen,
with shot many-a strong bow,

dâ mite sie liezen ûf sie gên.
there with they let upon them go.

dâ vor kunde niht gestên
there before could not stand

weder halsberc noch der rant.
neither hauberk nor the rim.

dâ von den edelen wîgant
there from the noble fighter

muoten sie mit maniger schar
troubled they with many-a troop

und schuzzen verre zuo in dar.
and shot far to them thither.

dô schirmden in die schilde.
then shielded them the shields.

ûf dem wîten gevilde
on the wide field

wâren sie al umbevangen.
were they all surrounded.

sie mohten ir niht erlangen
they might them not reach

leider mit den swerten.
alas with the swords.

die heiden sie dô werten
the heathens they then warded

dâ von sie wâren überladen.
there from they were overloaded.

sie mohten in niht geschaden.
they might to-them not harm.

sie wolden ir niht enbîten.
they would them not await.

ûf den snellen ravîten
on the swift horses

kâmens in selden sô nâhen
came-they to-them seldom so near

daz si in diu ros mohten vâhen.
that they from-them the horses might catch.

daz muote harte sêre
that grieved very sorely

den herzogen hêre
the duke lordly

und was im vaste unwerde
and was to-him hard unworthy

daz sie in ûf der erde
that they him on the earth

niht strîtes staten wolden:
not of-strife allow would:

dâ von die recken dolden
there from the warriors suffered

schaden unde ungemach.
harm and hardship.

dô der herzoge daz gesach
when the duke that saw

daz sîn wer was sô kranc,
that his defense was so weak,

mit dem vanen er dô dranc
with the banner he then pressed

durch daz kreftige her,
through the mighty host,

unz vil nâhe zuo dem mer,
until very near to the sea,

dâ er sînen kiel vant.
where he his keel found.

dô leit der edele wîgant
then suffered the noble fighter

arbeit unde starke nôt.
toil and strong distress.

im beleip dâ wunt und tôt
to-him remained there wounded and dead

fünf hundert sîner manne.
five hundred of-his men.

den andern half er danne
to-the others helped he thence
als eime helde wol gezam.
as to-a hero well befitted.
dô stuont der recke lobesam
then stood the warrior praiseworthy
ûf des meres sande
on the sea's sand
under sînes schildes rande.
under his shield's rim.
der grâve bî im vaste stuont,
the count by him hard stood,
als gesellen bî ein ander tuont,
as companions by one other do,
und hiez alle sîne man
and bade all his men
balde zuo dem schiffe gân,
quickly to the ship go,
daz sie den lîp generten.
that they the life saved.
die helde sich dô werten
the heroes themselves then defended
unz ir schifliute kâmen
until their shipmen came
und sie einzigen nâmen
and them singly took
mit der barken von in
with the barge from them
und fuortens ûf daz schif hin.
and led-them onto the ship thither.
dô sie sie brâhten gar dar an,
when they them brought wholly there on,

dô sprungen dise zwêne man
then sprang these two men

ûf ir barken unde fuoren hin.
onto their barge and fared thither.

dô sande in unser trähtîn
then sent to-them our Lord

zehant den aller besten wint
at-once the of-all best wind

der ê des oder sint
which before that or afterward

keinen liuten dorfte komen.
to-any people needed come.

des wart in sorge vil benomen
of-that became from-them of-care much taken

und wurden in ir muote frô.
and became in their mind glad.

ir segel sie dô zugen hô
their sails they then drew high

und sigelten ûf den wilden sê.
and sailed upon the wild sea.

doch tet in herzeclîche wê
yet did to-them heartily woe

umb ir geverten die sie liezen dâ.
about their companions whom they left there.

dô fuorte sie der wint sâ
then led them the wind at-once

verre ûf des meres strâm.
far upon the sea's current.

die heiden wâren in sô gram
the heathens were to-them so hostile

daz sie in kurzen wîlen
that they in short whiles

in nâch begunden îlen
to-them after began to-hasten

von den starken leiden
from the strong sorrows

in snellen galeiden
in swift galleys

den armen ellenden.
to-the poor exiles.

sie wolden gerne wenden
they would gladly prevent

daz si mit dem lîbe iht kœmen dan.
that they with the life at-all should-come thence.

der herzoge und sîne man,
the duke and his men,

die edelen recken ziere,
the noble warriors fine,

entfuoren in vil schiere
escaped-from them very soon

daz si ir niht mohten gesehen.
that they them not might see.

dô kunde in leider niht geschehen:
then could to-them alas nothing happen:

sie kêrten wider alzehant.
they turned back at-once.

dô daz volk diu mære ervant,
when the folk the tidings found-out,

daz der künic von Grippîâ
that the king of Grippia

und vil der sîne mit im dâ
and many of-the his with him there

ze tôde lægen erslagen,
to death lay slain,

daz begunden sie dô sêre klagen,
that began they then sorely to-lament,

als sie sie funden in nôten.
as they them found in distresses.

dô truogen sie die tôten
then carried they the dead

und begruoben sie vil drâte,
and buried them very quickly,

und gewunnen arzâte
and got physicians

die in heilten die wunden,
who to-them healed the wounds,

unde welten zuo den stunden
and chose at the hours

ze ir rîche einen andern man.
for their realm an other man.

disen muosen sie dô varn lân,
these must they then fare let,

den der tôt niht wolde lâzen leben.
whom the death not would let live.

dise wârn gevarn gote ergeben.
these were fared to-God devoted.

Der herzoge und die sîne,
The duke and the his,

die edelen pilgerîne,
the noble pilgrims,

kêrten dô êrst in den tôt.
turned then first into the death.

sie muosen lîden grôze nôt
they must suffer great distress

ûf des meres ünden.
on the sea's waves.

dô wart in ir sünden
then became from-them of-their sins

abe gewaschen harte vil,
off washed very much,

als ich iu nu sagen wil.
as I to-you now tell will.

nâch der âventiure sage
after the adventure's telling

sie kâmen an dem zwelften tage
they came on the twelfth day

eim lande sô nâhen,
to-a land so near,

dâ die helde sâhen
where the heroes saw

einen kreftigen berc stên.
a mighty mountain stand.

des endes begunde daz schef gên.
of-that end began the ship to-go.

der was geheizen Magnes.
it was called Magnes.

ir sult wol gelouben des
you shall well believe of-that

daz sie sîn nâmen gerne goume.
that they of-it took gladly heed.

dô sâhen sie vil masboume
then saw they many mast-trees

in den schiffen stên als ein walt.
in the ships stand as a forest.

des wâren die helde balt
of-that were the heroes bold

in ir gemüete vil gemeit.
in their mind very merry.

sie wânden alle ir arbeit
they believed all their toil

dâ solden überwinden.
there should overcome.

sie wânden ouch dâ vinden
they believed also there to-find

bürge und liute im lande dâ
castles and people in-the land there

als sie tâten in Grippîâ.
as they did in Grippia.

dô was ez noch vil unnâhen.
then was it still very not-near.

masboume als türne sie sâhen
mast-trees as towers they saw

in den schiffen als ich iu sagete ê.
in the ships as I to-you told before.

die wâren wîz als der snê
they were white as the snow

erblichen von dem weter gar.
bleached from the weather wholly.

sie stuonden blôz und missevar.
they stood bare and discolored.

XIV · THE MAGNET MOUNTAIN

The ship is drawn toward the Magnet Mountain, which pulls in every ship with iron nails, and Ernst's men confess and prepare to die. The keel lodges among the wrecks, rich with treasure, and the men starve one by one, their bodies carried off by griffins, until only Ernst and seven are left with half a loaf. Wetzel proposes that they sew themselves into hides, and they find sea-cattle hides in the wrecks and make all ready that night.

Die helde entwalden dô niht mê.
The heroes delayed then not more.

sie fuoren ûf dem wilden sê
they fared on the wild sea

in frôlîchem muote.
in joyful mind.

dô wânden die helde guote
then believed the heroes good

daz in sô wol solde ergân.
that to-them so well should go.

dô steic der eine schifman
then climbed the one shipman

ze oberest ûf den masboum.
to-the top up the mast-tree.

dô treip sie des meres stroum
then drove them the sea's current

vaste gegen der selben habe.
hard toward the same harbor.

do erschrac er sêre dar abe,
then took-fright he sorely there from,

do er den berc erkande.
when he the mountain recognized.

dô was im leide und ande:
then was to-him sorrow and grief:

her nider in daz schif dô
here down into the ship then

ruofte er den recken sô
called he to-the warriors so

'ir helde alsô ziere,
'you heroes so fine,

nu warnet iuch vil schiere
now ready yourselves very soon

hin zuo dem êwigen wesen.
thither to the eternal being.

wir sîn hie ungenesen,
we are here unsaved,

wan wir müezen hie bestân.
for we must here remain.

den berc den wir gesehen hân
the mountain which we seen have

daz ist ûf dem lebermer.
that is on the curdled-sea.

ez sî dan daz uns got erner,
unless-it be then that us God save,

wir sterben hie gemeine.
we die here in-common.

wir varn gein dem steine
we fare toward the stone

dâ von ir mich ê hôrtet reden.
there of you me before heard speak.

nû sult ir iuch verwegen
now shall you yourselves resolve

gên gote mit wâren riuwen,
toward God with true rue,

in dem herzen gar verniuwen
in the heart wholly renew

swaz ir wider in habt getân.
whatever you against him have done.

ich wil iuch, helde, wizzen lân
I will you, heroes, know let

von des steines krefte
of the stone's power

und von sîner meisterschefte
and of its mastery

die er von sîner art hât.
which it from its nature has.

swaz schiffe dar engegen gât
whatever ships there against go

inner drîzic mîlen,
within thirty miles,

in vil kurzen wîlen
in very short whiles

hât er sie zuo im gezogen.
has it them to itself drawn.

daz ist wâr und niht gelogen.
that is true and not lied.

habent sie et nietîsen,
(if)-have they just nails-of-iron,

diu darf dar nieman wîsen:
them need there no-one guide:

sie müezen âne ir danc dar gên.
they must without their thanks thither go.

diu schif diu wir dort sehen stên
the ships which we there see stand

vor dem tunkeln berge dort,
before the dark mountain there,

rehte vor des steines ort,
right before the stone's point,

dâ müezen wir ersterben
there must we die

und von hunger verderben:
and from hunger perish:

des mugen wir kein wandel hân;
of-that may we no remedy have;

als alle die hânt getân
as all those have done

die ie gesigelten her.
who ever sailed hither.

nu bitet alle got daz er
now beg all God that he

uns helfe und genædic sî:
us help and gracious be:

wir sîn dem steine nâhe bî.'
we are to-the stone near by.'

Dô der herzoge daz vernam,
When the duke that heard,

dô sprach der fürste lobesam
then spoke the prince praiseworthy

ze den herren sunderlîche
to the lords separately

‘nu sult ir inneclîche,
‘now shall you inwardly,

vil lieben nôtgesellen mîn,
very dear need-companions my,

manen unsern trähtîn
urge our Lord

daz er uns gnædeclîche
that he us graciously

enphâhe in sîn rîche.
receive into his kingdom.

wir verderben an disem steine:
we perish at this stone:

nu lobet in algemeine
now praise him all-in-common

mit herzen und mit zungen.
with heart and with tongue.

uns ist vil wol gelungen,
to-us is very well succeeded,

sterben wir ûf disem wilden sê:
(if)-die we on this wild sea:

wir sîn behalden immer mê
we are kept ever more

bî gote in sîme rîche.
by God in his kingdom.

nu freut iuch alle gelîche
now rejoice you all alike

daz wir im sô nâhe komen.’
that we to-him so near come.’

dô sie daz hâten vernomen,
when they that had heard,
si behieldenz in ir muote.
they kept-it in their mind.
dô tâten die helde guote
then did the heroes good
nâch des fürsten râte
after the prince's counsel
und schuofen ir dinc drâte
and made their thing quickly
mit allen dingen hin ze gote
with all things thither to God
und bekliben an sîme gebote
and clung to his command
mit bîhte und mit buoze,
with confession and with penance,
mit hôher unmuoze,
with high labor,
die man gên gote haben sol:
which one toward God have shall:
dâ mite bereiten sie sich wol.
there with readied they themselves well.
Dô die vil ellenden man
When the very exiled men
ir gebete heten getân
their prayers had done
und al ir dinc geschuofen,
and all their thing arranged,
jâmerlîch was ir ruofen
lamentable was their crying
daz sie ze gote tâten.
which they to God made.

ir schepher sie dô bâten
their creator they then begged

daz er in die sêle ruochte bewarn.
that he to-them the soul deign guard.

nu wârn die helde gevarn
now were the heroes fared

dem steine alsô nâhen
to-the stone so near

daz sie bescheidenlîche sâhen
that they clearly saw

diu schif mit den boumen hôch.
the ships with the masts high.

der stein die helde zôch
the stone the heroes drew

alsô snelleclîche zuo.
so swiftly to.

sîn kraft fuort daz schif duo
its power led the ship then

dar an sô krefteclîchen,
there to so mightily,

daz disem schiffe entwîchen
that to-this ship give-way

muosen diu andern schif gar.
must the other ships wholly.

ez kam sô hertlîchen dar
it came so hard there

gevarn zuo dem steine
fared to the stone

daz diu schif algemeine
that the ships all-in-common

sich an ein ander stiezen.
themselves on one other pushed.

die masboume ouch niht enliezen,
the mast-trees also not left-off,

sie gâben ein ander manigen stôz.
they gave one other many-a push.

die stœze wâren alsô grôz
the pushes were so great

daz manic schif dâ zebrast.
that many-a ship there burst.

sus was enphangen manic gast
thus was received many-a guest

die ouch dâ verdurben sider,
who also there perished afterward,

die nimmer mê kâmen wider.
who never more came back.

ouch mac man daz vür wunder sagen
also may one that for wonder say

daz dise niht wurden erslagen
that these not became slain

von den masboumen in den kielen,
by the mast-trees in the keels,

die von andern schiffen vielen
which from other ships fell

in ir schif mit gewalt,
into their ship with force,

die vûl wâren und alt.
which rotten were and old.

dô sie nider begunden gên,
when they down began to-go,

dâ kunde niht vür gestên
there could nothing before stand

swaz iender umb daz schif was.
whatever anywhere about the ship was.

daz diz schif ie genas,
that this ship ever survived,

daz was ein michel wunder.
that was a great wonder.

ez muose besunder
it must separately

allez vallen in daz mer.
all fall into the sea.

dô muost der herzoge und sîn her
then must the duke and his host

lîden ungefüege nôt,
suffer monstrous distress,

dô sie den freislîchen tôt
when they the fearsome death

dicke vor in sâhen stân.
often before them saw stand.

iedoch sô kâmen die küenen man
yet so came the bold men

mit dem lîbe vür den stein.
with the life before the stone.

diu gotes helfe an in dô schein.
the God's help on them then shone.

Dô der recken kiel gestuont,
When the warriors' keel stood-still,

sie tâten als noch liute tuont
they did as still people do

die lange an einer stat hânt legen
who long in one place have lain

und gerne barkens wolden phlegen:
and gladly of-barges would take-care:

dô sprungen die helde ziere
then sprang the heroes fine

abe dem schiffe schiere
off the ship soon

und giengen alle besunder
and went all separately

schouwen daz wunder
to-behold the wonder

in den schiffen manicvalt.
in the ships manifold.

sie stuonden dicke als ein walt
they stood thick as a forest

al umb den berc ûf dem sê.
all about the mountain on the sea.

ez gesach sît noch ê
there saw afterward nor before

nieman sô grôze rîcheit
no-one so great richness

sô die helde vil gemeit
as the heroes very merry

an den schiffen funden,
in the ships found,

daz ez ze langen stunden
that it in long hours

erahten nimmer kunde ir muot.
reckon never could their mind.

sie sâhn daz aller meiste guot
they saw the of-all most goods

daz ieman zer werlde mohte hân.
which anyone in-the world might have.

ez wart nie sô wîser man
there became never so wise man

der ez immer kunde erahten
who it ever could reckon

oder volleclîch ertrahten.
or fully think-out.

silber golt und edel gesteine,
silver gold and noble gems,

purpur samît phelle und sîden reine
purple samite brocade and silk pure

lac dâ sô maniger slahte
lay there of-so many-a kind

deiz nieman ahten mahte.
that-it no-one reckon might.

Dô sie daz wunder gar besâhen,
When they the wonder wholly beheld,

sie begunden vürbaz gâhen.
they began further to-hasten.

der herzoge und sîne man
the duke and his men

kâmen ûf den berc gegân,
came up the mountain walking,

ob si iender lant mohten sehen.
whether they anywhere land might see.

ir keines ouge kunde erspehen
of-them none's eye could espy

daz si kæmen ze lande.
that they should-come to land.

daz was den recken ande.
that was to-the warriors grief.

der berc stuont wîten in dem mer:
the mountain stood widely in the sea:

dâ muosen die helde âne wer
there must the heroes without defense

vil jâmerlîchen ersterben
very lamentably die

und vor hunger verderben.
and from hunger perish.

daz was den recken swære.
that was to-the warriors heavy.

dô muosen die helde mære
then must the heroes famous

angest lîden vor dem steine.
fear suffer before the stone.

sie sprâchen alle gemeine
they spoke all in-common

daz siz dolden guotlîche,
that they-it endured willingly,

sît daz sie got der rîche
since that them God the rich

der arbeit niht wolde erlân,
the toil not would spare,

als er alle die het getân
as he all those had done

die vor in dar wâren komen,
who before them there were come,

den ouch der lîp dâ wart benomen.
from-whom also the life there became taken.

sît sie diu nôt niht wolde mîden,
since them the distress not would avoid,

sie wolden gerne lîden
they would gladly suffer

durch sîn hulde den tôt,
for his favor the death,

und wolden dise grôze nôt
and would this great distress

ze buoze vür ir sünde hân.
as penance for their sin have.

der herzoge und sîne man
the duke and his men

hâten trôst ze der meide kinde.
had comfort in the maiden's child.

dô swebete daz gesinde
then hovered the household

sô lange zît ûf dem sê
so long time on the sea

daz in weder sît noch ê
that to-them neither afterward nor before

mit gesundem lîp sô wê geschach,
with healthy body so woe happened,

wan in der spîse gebrach
for to-them the food lacked

und der guoten lîpnar
and the good victuals

die sie hâten brâht dar
which they had brought there

von Grippîâ dem lande,
from Grippia the land,

dâ sie die wîgande
where they the fighters

vil manlîche erwurben.
very manfully won.

von hunger sie dô sturben
from hunger they then died

swaz ir in dem schiffe was,
whatever of-them in the ship was,

daz dâ nieman genas
that there no-one survived

von dem volke algemeine
of the folk all-in-common

wan der herzoge alters eine
except the duke quite alone

und noch mit im siben man.
and still with him seven men.

die andern truoc ein grîfe dan
the others carried a griffin thence
zeinzigen sô sie sturben.
singly as they died.
die lebendigen alsô wurben:
the living so dealt:
swelhen ie der tôt nam,
whomever ever the death took,
den truogen die helde lobesam
him carried the heroes praiseworthy
ûz dem schiffe schiere.
out-of the ship soon.
in leiten die degen ziere
him laid the thanes fine
obene ûf des schiffes bort:
above upon the ship's board:
daz habt ir dicke gehôrt
that have you often heard
sagen vür ungelogen.
told for unlied.
die grîfen kâmen dar geflogen
the griffins came there flown
und fuortens hin zir neste.
and carried-them thither to-their nest.
alsô wart ouch ze leste
so became also at-the last
dem herzogen und sînen man
to-the duke and his men
von den grîfen geholfen dan:
by the griffins helped thence:
dâ von sie sît genâsen.
there from they afterward survived.

die andern wurden z'âsen
the others became as-carrion

den grîfen und den jungen.
to-the griffins and the young.

in was dicke alsô gelungen
to-them was often so succeeded

an liuten genuogen
with people enough

die sie von dannen truogen
whom they from thence carried

zir neste nâch gewonheit:
to-their nest after custom:

dâ von die helde gemeit,
there from the heroes merry,

der herzoge und sîne man,
the duke and his men,

ze lande kâmen wider dan.
to land came back thence.

Der fürste leit ungemach,
The prince suffered hardship,

do er sîne geverten sach
when he his companions saw

vor hunger verderben
from hunger perish

und so jâmerlîche sterben
and so lamentably die

und in niht gehelfen kunde.
and to-them not help could.

des muose er manige stunde
of-that must he many-a hour

obe in lîden die jâmers nôt,
over them suffer the grief's distress,

als lange unze sie der tôt
so long until them the death

vor sînen ougen gar genam,
before his eyes wholly took,

sô daz der recke lobesam
so that the warrior praiseworthy

nieman het wan siben man.
no-one had except seven men.

die selben mohten kûme hân
the same might hardly have

daz leben von des hungers nôt.
the life from the hunger's distress.

sie hâten wan ein halbez brôt:
they had only a half bread:

daz teilten die helde under sich.
that divided the heroes among themselves.

daz was genuoc jâmerlich,
that was enough lamentable,

wan sie hâten niht mêr.
for they had not more.

do ergâben sie sich gote hêr
then gave-up they themselves to-God lordly

mit lîbe und sêle in sîn gewalt.
with body and soul into his power.

dô vielen die recken vil balt
then fell the warriors very bold

an ir venje nider in kriuzestal,
on their prostration down in cross-form,

und bâten des über al
and begged of-that over all

inneclîch unsern trähtîn
inwardly our Lord

daz er in gnædic wolde sîn
that he to-them gracious would be

und in hulfe von der grôzen nôt.
and them would-help from the great distress.

harte vorhten sie den tôt.
very-much feared they the death.

Dô dise jâmerhafte man
When these grief-stricken men

hâten ir gebet getân,
had their prayer done,

daz in ze helfe sît geschach,
that to-them to help afterward happened,

der grâve Wetzel dô sprach
the count Wetzel then spoke

'ich hân an disen stunden
'I have at these hours

uns einen list ervunden
for-us a wile found-out

daz uns niht bezzer darf wesen.
that to-us not better needs be.

suln wir immer genesen,
(if)-shall we ever survive,

daz muoz gwislîch dâ von geschehen
that must certainly there from happen

daz wir suochen unde spehen,
that we search and spy,

ê daz wir erwinden,
before that we turn-back,

unz wir in den scheffen vinden
until we in the ships find

etelîcher hande hiute,
of-some kind hides,

und sliefen wir ellende liute
and slip we exiled people

in unser guoten sarwât.
in our good armor.

sô man uns dan vernæt hât
when one us then sewn has

in die hiute,' sprach der degen,
into the hides,' spoke the thane,

'sô suln wir uns danne legen
'so shall we ourselves then lay

vor ûf daz schif sâ.
before upon the ship at-once.

sô nement uns die grîfen dâ
so take us the griffins there

und füerent uns von hinnen.
and carry us from hence.

sô mugen uns niht gewinnen
so may us not win

die grîfen vor der sarwât
the griffins for the armor

diu uns dicke beschirmet hât:
which us often shielded has:

diu mac uns ouch dâ ze helfe komen.
it may to-us also there to help come.

sô wir danne haben vernomen
when we then have perceived

daz die alden fuotern sint,
that the old-ones foraging are,

sô snîden wir uns ûz sint
so cut we ourselves out afterward

und stîgen nider zuo der erden.
and climb down to the earth.

sol ez ab anders umbe uns werden
(if)-shall it but otherwise about us become

daz got niht wil daz wir genesen,
that God not wills that we survive,

sô mac uns michel lieber wesen
so may to-us much dearer be

daz wir dort redelîch ligen tôt
that we there honorably lie dead

dan wir dise starke nôt
than we this strong distress

lîden alsô jæmerlîch.'
suffer so lamentably.'

dô sprâchen sie algelîch,
then spoke they all-alike,

got hæte gegeben im den sin.
God had given to-him the wit.

zehant dô liefens alle hin
at-once then ran-they all thither

zuo den kielen an den stunden.
to the keels at the hours.

merrinder hiute sie funden
sea-cattle hides they found

in den schiffen ein michel teil.
in the ships a great part.

des wurden dô die recken geil
of-that became then the warriors joyous

und in ir muote harte frô.
and in their mind very glad.

wider zir schiffe kâmens dô
back to-their ship came-they then

und gehabten sich nâch freuden siten.
and bore themselves after joys' manner.

ein hût sie dô ze riemen sniten,
a hide they then into straps cut,

dâ mite sie sich în naejen wolden.
there with they themselves in sew would.

swaz si zir geverte haben solden,
whatever they for-their journey have should,

daz wart die naht gar bereit.
that became the night wholly ready.

die vil grôzen arbeit
the very great toil

bestuondens ûf unsers herren trôst
undertook-they upon our lord's comfort

der sie ê dicke hâte erlôst.
who them before often had released.

XV · THE GRIFFINS

Ernst and Wetzel are sewn into hides and carried off by griffins to their nest, where they cut themselves free and climb down into a forest; the others follow two by two, but one dies of weakness. Finding a river that runs through a mountain, they build a raft and pass through the dark tunnel, where Ernst breaks off a shining stone, the Orphan now in the imperial crown, and the poet cites a Latin book at Bamberg as his source.

Do ez allez bereit wart
When it all ready became

des sie bedorften zuo ir vart,
of-what they needed for their journey,

ze râte se giengen under in
to council they went among them

wer der êrste solde sîn
who the first should be

den man vernæte in die hût.
whom one sewed into the hide.

dô sprach der grâve über lût
then spoke the count over loud

'daz sol mîn herre unt ich.
'that shall my lord and I.

ich vernæje in unde mich
I sew him and me

in zwô hiute uns beide, 4225
into two hides us both,

wan ich mich nimmer gescheide
for I myself never part

von im lebende noch tôt.
from him living nor dead.

ich wil angest unde nôt
I will fear and distress

bî im lîden swiez ergât.
by him suffer however-it goes.

swie im sîn dinc enstât 4230
however to-him his thing stands

ze genesen oder ze sterben
to survive or to die

oder swie wir suln verderben,
or however we shall perish,

daz muoz uns ensamt geschehen.
that must to-us together happen.

ir sult iuch des vil wol versehen.
you shall yourselves of-that very well expect.

hât uns got daz heil gegeben 4235
(if)-has to-us God the luck given

daz wir behalden unser leben
that we keep our life

und dort von den jungen komen,
and there from the young come,

ir werdet ouch schiere hie genomen.
you become also soon here taken.

ir sult nâch uns niht klagen.
you shall after us not lament.

iu kan nieman gesagen
to-you can no-one tell

die kraft die der vogel hât.
the strength which the bird has.

ist daz uns der lîp bestât,
(if)-is that to-us the life stays,

wir komen zuo ein ander wider.'
we come to one other back.'

daz geschach ouch endelîche sider.
that happened also at-last afterward.

Daz dûhte sie dô guot getân.
That seemed to-them then well done.

dô garten sich die zwêne man,
then girded themselves the two men,

dô sie den tac ersâhen:
when they the day saw:

do begundens vaste gâhen
then began-they hard to-hasten

in ir guoten sarwât
into their good armor

die ein ieclîcher ritter hât
which an each knight has

der ze nôt wol wil gewâfent sîn:
who at need well will armed be:

helm schilt und hosen îserîn.
helm shield and hose of-iron.

diu swert sie niht umbe gurten.
the swords they not about girded.

mit in sie sie sus fuorten.
with them they them thus carried.

sie leitens bî in alsô bar.
they laid-them by them so bare.

dô næt mans in die hût gar
then sewed one-them into the hide wholly

[dicke] von eime merrinde.
[*thick*] *of a sea-cattle.*

dô weinte daz gesinde,
then wept the household,

dô man sie solde tragen dan.
when one them should carry thence.

dô bat er alle sîne man
then bade he all his men

daz sie ze gote gelouben hæten
that they in God belief had

unde rehte nâch im tæten,
and rightly after him should-do,

daz ein den andern besiute
that one the other sew

in die starken rindes hiute
into the strong cattle's hides

und daz sie ir got liezen phlegen.
and that they them God let take-care.

dô weinden umb den küenen degen
then wept for the bold thane

vil sêre recken gelîch.
very sorely warriors alike.

daz scheiden was jâmerlîch
the parting was lamentable

daz sie von ein ander tâten,
which they from one other made,

dô sie ez alsô heten gerâten.
when they it so had counseled.

Dô der tac wol ûf kam,
When the day well up came,

dise herren man dô nam,
these lords one then took,

als ir ê habt gehôrt,
as you before have heard,

und leitens ûf des schiffes bort,
and laid-them upon the ship's board,

mit starken hiuten wol durchzogen.
with strong hides well drawn-through.

dô kâmen grîfen geflogen
then came griffins flown

über daz mer vil breit
over the sea very broad

nâch ir alden gwonheit
after their old custom

aber gein den schiffen dar.
again toward the ships there.

als sie ir wurden gewar,
when they of-them became aware,

ieclîcher zuht den sînen dan
each snatched the his thence

snellîchen in sînen klân:
swiftly into his claw:

vil harte sie sie twungen
very hard they them gripped

und fuorten sie ir jungen
and carried them to-their young

und liezens vor in allen
and let-them before them all

in daz nest vallen.
into the nest fall.

die versuochtenz maniger wîse
they tried-it many-a way

und mohten doch der spîse
and might yet of-the food

nie niht gewinnen
never anything win

noch die hût entrennen.
nor the hide unstitch.

dô muosen sie sie lâzen ligen.
then must they them let lie.

sie sniten sich ûz unde stigen
they cut themselves out and climbed

abe dem steine in den walt,
off the stone into the forest,

dâ den helden vil balt
where to-the heroes very bold

die grîfen mohten niht geschaden.
the griffins might not harm.

sie hâte gnædeclîch entladen
them had graciously relieved

got der starken swære.
God of-the strong heaviness.

des danctens ir schephære.
for-that thanked-they their creator.

Dise zwêne wârn alsô genesen
These two were so saved

daz sie ân angest mohten wesen.
that they without fear might be.

under dicke boume sie sich zugen.
under thick trees they themselves drew.

die grîfen dô hin wider flugen
the griffins then thither back flew

und holden aber zwêne man.
and fetched again two men.

dô sies ze neste brâhten dan,
when they-them to nest brought thence,

den geschach als den vordern sider.
to-them happened as to-the former afterward.

die lôsten sich ouch und stigen nider
they loosed themselves also and climbed down

und genâsen vor den jungen.
and survived from the young.

die grîfen hin wider swungen
the griffins thither back swung

aber zem dritten mâle.
again for-the third time.

dô heten sich sunder twâle
then had themselves without delay

zwêne benæt vil sêre.
two sewn very sorely.

der dritte enmohte mêre
the third not-might more

vor unkraft hân dehein wer.
for weakness have any defense.

der muose sterben ûf dem mer:
he must die on the sea:

im begunde diu kraft enslîfen.
to-him began the strength to-slip-away.

die andern fuorten die grîfen
the others carried the griffins

ze âse aber ir kinden.
as carrion again to-their children.

mit griffen harte swinden
with grips very swift

versuochten sies in allen enden.
tried they-them in all ends.

doch muosen sie die ellenden
yet must they the exiles

âne ir danc genesen lân.
without their thanks survive let.

die tâten als jene habent getân:
they did as those have done:

sie stigen abe in den walt.
they climbed down into the forest.

des fröwete sich der helt balt,
of-that rejoiced himself the hero bold,

Ernest der vil küene man.
Ernst the very bold man.

als er sie sach ze ime gân,
when he them saw to him go,

dô wart er herzeclîche frô.
then became he heartily glad.

gegen in spranc der herre dô
toward them sprang the lord then

und kustes alle besunder.
and kissed-them all separately.

dô het got aber ein wunder
then had God again a wonder

begân als er vil dicke hât.
done as he very often has.

sît wart der herren guot rât,
afterward became for-the lords good counsel,

als got wolde und er gebot.
as God would and he commanded.

sô überwundens alle ir nôt.
so overcame-they all their distress.

Do si alsô zesamene wâren komen,
When they so together were come,

des wart grôz freude von in vernomen,
of-that became great joy by them heard,

wan in unser trähtîn
for to-them our Lord

nâch grôzer erbermde sîn
after great mercy his

hâte beide lîp und leben
had both body and life

wider zeichenlîch gegeben,
back wondrously given,

als er noch tuot genuogen.
as he still does to-many.

daz sie die jungen niht ersluogen,
that they the young not slew,

der herzoge und sîne man,
the duke and his men,

daz wart durch den list getân:
that became for the wile done:

wærn die grîfen von in erslagen,
(if)-were the griffins by them slain,

sô wære keiner mê getragen
so were none more carried

her über von den alden.
here over by the old-ones.

sus wart ir aller lîp behalden,
thus became of-them all life kept,

daz sies ir jungen brâhten.
that they-them to-their young brought.

die herren dô gedâhten
the lords then thought

daz sie strichen in den walt.
that they should-roam into the forest.

dô wâren die helde balt
then were the heroes bold

vil wünneclîche gar.
very delightfully wholly.

vil lützel sie der lîpnar
very little they of-the victuals

in dem walde funden.
in the forest found.

dô âzens under stunden
then ate-they at times

wurze und swaz ez mohte sîn.
herbs and whatever it might be.

dô kâmen die armen pilgerîn
then came the poor pilgrims

an ein wazzer, daz was grôz,
to a water, that was great,

daz vil snelleclîche flôz,
which very swiftly flowed,

lûter unde wol getân.
clear and well made.

des wâren die ellenden man
of-that were the exiled men

in ir gemüete vil frô.
in their mind very glad.

dô gelabten sie sich dô,
then refreshed they themselves then,

wan ez was gar vische rîch.
for it was wholly of-fish rich.

die edeln recken lobelîch
the noble warriors praiseworthy

in daz wazzer giengen.
into the water went.

mit den henden si ir geviengen
with the hands they of-them caught

sô vil daz sie sich ernerten
so many that they themselves sustained

und dem hunger wol erwerten.
and from-the hunger well defended.

des gnâdeten sie gote tiure.
for-that thanked they God dearly.

sie brieten sie bî dem fiure:
they roasted them by the fire:

daz mohten sie dô wol hân.
that might they then well have.

dô suochten die vil küenen man
then searched the very bold men

beide vür unde wider,
both forth and back,

daz wazzer ûf unde nider
the water up and down

ob si iender über möhten komen.
whether they anywhere over might come.

schier wart in der trôst benomen,
soon became from-them the comfort taken,

daz sie muosen dannen wenden,
that they must thence turn,

oberhalp von steinwenden,
above by rock-walls,

niderhalp von gebirge hôch
below by mountains high

daz sich ûf gên den wolken zôch:
which itself up toward the clouds drew:

daz wazzer dâ durch hin flôz.
the water there through thither flowed.

daz was starc unde grôz,
that was strong and great,

daz iu daz nieman kan gesagen.
that to-you that no-one can tell.

do begunden aber die herren klagen
then began again the lords to-lament

ir jâmerlîch ellende.
their lamentable exile.

sie wânden nemen ir ende.
they believed to-take their end.

Sie klageten aber gote ir nôt.
They lamented again to-God their distress.

harte forhten sie den tôt,
very-much feared they the death,

wan sie niht mohten über komen.
for they not might over come.

als ir ê habt vernomen,
as you before have heard,

daz wazzer was tief unde breit.
the water was deep and broad.

dô nâhte in michel arbeit.
then neared to-them great toil.

ir angest was unmâzen grôz.
their fear was beyond-measure great.

daz wazzer durch den berc schôz
the water through the mountain shot

zeim loche, daz was enge.
to-a hole, that was narrow.

mit grôzem gedrenge
with great crush

ez durch den berc ran.
it through the mountain ran.

'nu râtet,' sprach der küene man,
'now counsel,' spoke the bold man,

'wie wir nû werben.
'how we now deal.

wir müezen hie ersterben,
we must here die,

suln wir langer hie bestân.'
(if)-shall we longer here remain.'

dô sprach der grâve sîn man
then spoke the count his man

'uns ist der trôst gar benomen.
'from-us is the comfort wholly taken.

sît wir niht über mugen komen,
since we not over may come,

wir müezenz nu wâgen.
we must-it now risk.

nu lân uns niht betrâgen
now let us not weary

daz wir machen ein flôz,
that we make a raft,

alsô starc und alsô grôz
so strong and so great

daz wir den lîp dar ûf bewarn.
that we the life there upon guard.

wir müezen durch daz loch varn:
we must through the hole fare:

des mac nu niht rât wesen.
of-that may now no remedy be.

wir sterben oder genesen,
we die or survive,

daz muoz nu dâ ze gote stân.'
that must now there with God stand.'

dar zuo griffen sie dô sân
there to grasped they then at-once

unde worhten schiere ein flôz,
and wrought soon a raft,

daz was starc unde grôz.
that was strong and great.

starke boume sie dar truogen
strong trees they there carried

die si mit den swerten abe sluogen:
which they with the swords off struck:

sien mohten ander wâfen hân.
they-not might other weapons have.

starc gespenge sie dar an
strong clasps they there on

mit wîden vaste bunden.
with withies hard bound.

dô giengens an den stunden
then went-they at the hours

mit sorgen ûf daz flôz stân.
with cares onto the raft stand.

do bevulhen sich die küenen man
then commended themselves the bold men

flîzeclîch unserm trähtîn
diligently to-our Lord

und der vil lieben muoter sîn
and to-the very dear mother his

und allen sînen heiligen.
and to-all his saints.

ze himele sie dicke nigen
to heaven they often bowed

ê sie sich liezen in daz loch.
before they themselves let into the hole.

daz wunder sagt man uns noch
the wonder tells one to-us still

daz den helden dô geschach.
that to-the heroes then happened.

sie liten vil grôz ungemach
they suffered very great hardship

ê sie sich dar în liezen.
before they themselves there in let.

vil dicke sie in stiezen
very often they to-them pushed

manigen unsenften stôz.
many-a ungentle push.

ir angest diu was vil grôz
their fear it was very great

ê si durch den berc kâmen.
before they through the mountain came.

vil manigen schric sie nâmen
very many-a fright they took

der in den tôt tet bekant.
which to-them the death made known.

dô half in unser heilant
then helped them our Savior

daz sie in den stunden
that they at the hours

ir nôt wol überwunden.
their distress well overcame.

Sie liten arbeit iedoch,
They suffered toil yet,

ê sie kâmen durch daz loch,
before they came through the hole,

in einer starken vinster,
in a strong darkness,

zer zeswen und zer winster,
to-the right and to-the left,

dâ sie sich stiezen her und dar.
where they themselves pushed hither and thither.

dô schein der berc inner gar
then shone the mountain inside wholly

von maniger hande steine.
of many-a kind stones.

die wâren al gemeine
they were all in-common

schœne unde wol gevar.
beautiful and well colored.

ouch was der grunt unden gar
also was the ground below wholly

in der selben mâze erkant.
in the same measure known.

Ernst der edele wîgant
Ernst the noble fighter

einen stein dar under sach
a stone there among saw

den er ûz dem velse brach.
which he out-of the rock broke.

der stein gap vil liehten glast.
the stone gave very bright gleam.

den brâhte sît der werde gast
it brought afterward the worthy guest

ûz der vil starken freise.
out-of the very strong peril.

dâ von er wart der weise
there from it became the orphan

durch sîn ellen genant.
for its valor named.

er ist noch hiute wol bekant.
it is still today well known.

ins rîches krône man in siht.
in-the realm's crown one it sees.

von diu liuget uns daz buoch niht.
of that lies to-us the book not.

ist aber hie dehein man
(if)-is but here any man

der dise rede welle hân
who this speech will have

vür ein lügenlîchez werc,
for a lying work,

4470 der kome hin ze Babenberc:
he come thither to Bamberg:

dâ vindet ers ein ende
there finds he-it an end

ân alle missewende
without all blemish

von dem meister derz getihtet hât.
from the master who-it composed has.

ze latîne ez noch geschriben stât:
in Latin it still written stands:

4475 dâ von ez âne valschen list
there from it without false wile

ein vil wârez liet ist.
a very true song is.

XVI · ARIMASPI

They come out in the land of Arimaspi, whose people have one eye in the forehead. A count takes them in and clothes them, and at a festival the king admires their arms and takes them into his service. They learn the language, and Ernst leads the king's army against the Flatfeet, who shelter from rain under their broad feet; he wins, and the king grants him a duchy.

Do die helde begunden nâhen
When the heroes began to-near

dâ sie den tac sâhen,
where they the day saw,

do begunde ouch daz loch wîten.
then began also the hole to-widen.

sie kâmen in kurzen zîten
they came in short times

in ein vil grôze lant.
into a very great land.

des wart der edele wîgant
of-that became the noble fighter

mit den sînen vil frô.
with the his very glad.

ze stade kêrten sie dô
to shore turned they then

und liezen daz flôz stên.
and let the raft stand.

dô begunden dannen gên
then began thence to-go

die recken küene unde balt.
the warriors keen and bold.

sie kâmen in einen grôzen walt
they came into a great forest

dâ sie riutære funden,
where they clearers found,

der sprâche sie niht enkunden.
whose speech they not knew.

ze den begunden sie dô gâhen.
to them began they then to-hasten.

dô sie sie von êrste sâhen,
when they them at first saw,

dô vlôch man wîp unde kint.
then fled men women and children.

des funden die helde sint
of-that found the heroes afterward

so vil brôtes daz sie sich ernerten
so much bread that they themselves sustained

und des hungers erwerten.
and from-the hunger defended.

in was diu kraft entwichen.
from-them was the strength escaped.

durch den walt sie strichen.
through the forest they roamed.

got hete sie dar schiere gesant
God had them there soon sent

in ein vil schœne lant:
into a very beautiful land:

daz was ein künicrîche,
that was a kingdom,

dâ sie vil hêrlîche
where they very lordly

manige bürge sâhen stân.
many castles saw stand.

als wir dâ von vernomen hân,
as we there of heard have,

daz lant hiez Arimaspî.
the land was-called Arimaspi.

des was der edele fürste frî
of-that was the noble prince free

in sînem muote vil frô.
in his mind very glad.

die helde wâren komen dô
the heroes were come then

in eines herren grâfschaft.
into a lord's county.

der hâte mit grôzer kraft
he had with great strength

ein schœne burc gebûwen.
a beautiful castle built.

des sult ir wol getrûwen,
of-that shall you well trust,

sie was wît und hêrlîch.
it was wide and lordly.

die liute wâren wunderlîch
the people were wondrous

die daz lant heten besezzen.
who the land had possessed.

sie wâren vil vermezzen:
they were very daring:

des mugen wir niht gelougen.
of-that may we not deny.

sie heten niht wan ein ouge
they had not but one eye

vorne an dem hirne.
in-front on the forehead.

sie hiezen einsterne,
they were-called one-stars,

ze latîne hiezens Cyclôpes.
in Latin were-they-called Cyclopes.

die helde nâhten under des
the heroes neared under that

der selben bürge wol getân.
the same castle well made.

sie muosen grôze angest hân
they must great fear have

wie man sie hie enphienge
how one them here received

oder wie ir dinc ergienge
or how their thing went

und wie ez dâ solde gestân.
and how it there should stand.

'wir suln,' sprach der fürste sân,
'we shall,' spoke the prince at-once,

'gên ûf die gotes genâde dar.'
'go upon the God's grace thither.'

schiere wurden sie gewar
soon became they aware

des grâven vor der bürge tor,
of-the count before the castle's gate,

der mit rittern dâ vor
who with knights there before

kurzwîlen in den zîten gie,
for-pastime at the times went,

der sie vil minneclîche enphie
who them very lovingly received

und mit vil grôzen êren.
and with very great honors.

dô fuorte er die hêren
then led he the lords

ûf ein rîchez palas.
up-to a rich palace.

vil liep dem wirte zuo in was.
very dear to-the host to them was.

ir sprâche was in unbekant.
their speech was to-them unknown.

der herre wincte in mit der hant
the lord beckoned to-them with the hand

daz si abe tæten die sarwât.
that they off did the armor.

dô was ir worden guot rât.
then was of-them become good counsel.

Der grâve was ein guoter man.
The count was a good man.

er hiez die geste wol hân:
he bade the guests well have:

dar zuo er inz selbe wol erpôt
there to he to-them-it self well offered

(des was den recken vil nôt)
(of-that was to-the warriors much need)

in maniger hande wîse,
in many-a kind way,

mit kleidern und mit spîse,
with clothes and with food,

daz sie ez wol mohten lîden.
that they it well might bear.

mit pheller und mit sîden
with brocade and with silk

hiez sie der grâve kleiden.
bade them the count clothe.

er was ein man bescheiden,
he was a man discerning,

er bekande an ir gebæren
he recognized in their bearing

daz sie edele liute wæren:
that they noble people were:

des erbarmde in ir ungemach.
of-that moved-to-pity him their hardship.

dâ von in guotes vil geschach
there from to-them of-good much happened

von im dar nâch lange sît.
from him there after long afterward.

do geviel ez an ein hôchgezît,
then fell it on a festival,

daz der künic von dem lande
that the king of the land

allenthalben sande
everywhere sent

nâch sînen mâgen unde man,
after his kinsmen and men,

daz sie niht solden lân
that they not should leave

sie kæmen ze hove gar.
they should-come to court wholly.

die fürsten kâmen alle dar
the princes came all thither

wîten von dem rîche,
widely from the realm,

die herren al gelîche,
the lords all alike,

beide nâhe und verre.
both near and far.

dô kam ouch dirre herre
then came also this lord

ze hove mit grôzen êren.
to court with great honors.

vür den künic hêren
before the king lordly

fuort der grâve mit im dan
led the count with him thence

den herzogen und sîne man,
the duke and his men,

gewâfent wol ze flîze
armed well with diligence

in ir halsberge wîze
in their hauberks white

und ir hosen îserîn.
and their hose of-iron.

daz gap allez liehten schîn.
that gave all bright shine.

sie wâren vil hêrlîche gar.
they were very lordly wholly.

als ir der künic wart gewar,
when of-them the king became aware,

er neic in albesunder
he bowed to-them all-separately

und nam in michel wunder:
and took him great wonder:

wa er die recken hæte genomen,
where he the warriors had taken,

oder wannen sie im wæren komen,
or whence they to-him were come,

frâgt er den grâven sâ zehant.
asked he the count straightway at-once.

[er sprach] ‘herre, mir ist unbekant
[*he spoke*] *‘lord, to-me is unknown*

von wannen oder wer sie sîn.
from whence or who they be.

sie kâmen in daz hûs mîn
they came into the house my

ichn weiz von wannen gegân,
I know-not from whence walking,

von hunger jâmerlîch getân.
from hunger lamentably made.

sît hiez ich ir,’ sprach der degen,
afterward bade I of-them,’ spoke the thane,

‘mit spîse volleclîche phlegen
‘with food fully take-care

mîn liute, man als an in wol siht.
my people, one as on them well sees.

si vernement unser sprâche niht:
they understand our speech not:

ir gebære ist vil manlîch.'
their bearing is very manly.'

dô schouwete der künic rîch
then beheld the king rich

ir helme schilde unde swert.
their helms shields and swords.

sie wâren im liep unde wert.
they were to-him dear and worthy.

im geviel vil wol ir leben.
to-him pleased very well their life.

dô bater den grâven sie im geben.
then bade-he the count them to-him give.

der grâve gaps dem künige dô.
the count gave-them to-the king then.

des wart er herzeclîchen frô.
of-that became he heartily glad.

der recken er sich underwant
of-the warriors he himself took-charge

und hiez dô ziehen sâ zehant
and bade then lead straightway at-once

ein vil schœne castellân,
a very beautiful Castilian,

starc unde wol getân,
strong and well made,

vür in ûf den hof dar.
before him onto the court there.

dâ bî wolde er nemen war
there by would he take heed

welher der tiurste wære.
which the worthiest were.

Ernest der degen mære
Ernst the thane famous

zehant nâch dem zoume greif.
at-once after the bridle grasped.

er spranc dar ûf ân stegereif
he sprang there upon without stirrup

und reit ez ritterlîche.
and rode it knightly.

dô hiez der künic rîche
then bade the king rich

in und alle sîne man
him and all his men

mit dienest als in selben hân
with service as him self have

mit aller hande sachen
with of-all kinds things

und wol gereiten machen,
and well equipped make,

und gap in kamerære
and gave to-them chamberlains

der in bereit wære
who to-them ready were

swes sie bedorften zuo der nôt.
of-whatever they needed for the need.

al sînen liuten er gebôt
to-all his people he commanded

daz sie in dienen solden
that they them serve should

swie sie selbe wolden:
however they self would:

daz sie alle gerne tâten.
which they all gladly did.

sus hâte sie got berâten.
thus had them God provided-for.

Also bliben sie bî dem künige hie.
So remained they by the king here.

dô sich der hof dô zerlie,
when itself the court then dispersed,

der künic ir flîzeclîche phlac
the king of-them diligently took-care

dar nâch vil manigen tac.
there after very many-a day.

man huote ir schône, daz ist wâr,
one guarded of-them carefully, that is true,

mê danne ein ganzez jâr,
more than a whole year,

ê sie die sprâche kunden.
before they the speech knew.

dar nâch in kurzen stunden
there after in short hours

hiez er den herzogen gewinnen
bade he the duke fetch

und bat in mit guoten minnen
and begged him with good love

im sagen diu rehten mære,
to-him tell the right tidings,

von welhem lande er wære
from which land he were

und wie getânen namen er hæte,
and what kind-of name he had,

daz er im daz kunt tæte
that he to-him that known made

und im sagt diu rehten mære
and to-him told the right tidings

waz mannes er selbe wære
what of-man he self were

und wie er kæme in daz lant.
and how he came into the land.

des antworte im der wîgant
for-that answered him the fighter

unde tete im kunt diu mære
and made to-him known the tidings

daz er ein herzoge gwesen wære
that he a duke been were

dâ heime in sîme lande,
there at-home in his land,

wie in âne schulde und âne schande
how him without guilt and without shame

vertreip der rîchsten künige ein
drove-out of-the richest kings one

der von anegenge kein
which from beginning any

ie wurde in dem rîche:
ever became in the realm:

und sagete im sunderlîche
and told to-him separately

des landes site und gebære
the land's customs and bearing

und wie er dar komen wære.
and how he thither come were.

Dô der künic gar vernam
When the king wholly heard

diu mære wie er dar kam
the tidings how he thither came

und von manigen landes siten,
and of many-a land's customs,

und waz er arbeit hæte erliten
and what he of-toil had suffered

sît er von sînem lande schiet,
since he from his land parted,

do gebôt er aller sîner diet
then commanded he all his folk

daz sie sich des bewægen
that they themselves to-that bound

und ir mit flîze phlægen:
and of-them with diligence took-care:

daz gebôt er für unde wider.
that commanded he forth and back.

des was er im immer sider
of-that was he to-him ever afterward

mit triuwen herzeclîchen holt.
with faith heartily gracious.

er gap im silber unde golt
he gave to-him silver and gold

und allez daz er wolde hân.
and all that he would have.

alsô het got ze in getân.
so had God to them done.

Hie lâzen wir belîben daz:
Here let we remain that:

ich wil iu sagen vürbaz.
I will to-you tell further.

dem künic von Arimaspî
by-the king of Arimaspi

sâzen wunderlîche liute bî:
dwelt wondrous people by:

Plathüeve wâren sie genant
Flatfeet were they named

und tâten im schaden in sîn lant
and did to-him harm in his land

und brâhten in dicke in arbeit.
and brought him often into toil.

den wârn die füeze vil breit
to-them were the feet very broad

und alsô den swanen gestalt.
and so to-the swans shaped.

die fuorten grôzen gewalt
they carried great power

über hart und über bruoch.
over forest and over marsh.

sie truogen keiner slahte schuoch.
they wore of-no kind shoe.

swann ungewiter wolde werden,
when storm would become,

sô leite er sich ûf die erden:
so laid he himself upon the earth:

sô hebet er einen fuoz über sich.
so raises he a foot over himself.

daz was genuoc wunderlich.
that was enough wondrous.

so im daz weter lange war,
when to-him the weather long lasted,

den andern fuoz hebte er dar,
the other foot raised he there,

sô im dirre muode wart.
when to-him this-one tired became.

alsô wâren sie bewart
so were they guarded

daz in ze keiner stunde
that to-them at no hour

kein weter geschaden kunde.
no weather harm could.

Die Plathüeve alsô gefuoren
The Flatfeet so fared

daz sie hervart swuoren
that they campaign swore

ûf den künic von Arimaspî.
upon the king of Arimaspi.

sie wâren ir gemüetes frî
they were of-their mind free

und truogen geschôz freislich.
and carried missiles fearsome.

dô besanden sie sich
then summoned they themselves

inner tac und inner naht
within day and within night

und wunnen vil grôze maht
and won very great might

gegen des küniges lande.
against the king's land.

mit roube und mit brande
with robbery and with burning

wolden sie den künic hern
would they the king harry

und sîn rîche gar verhern.
and his realm wholly lay-waste.

dem künige kam diu botschaft
to-the king came the message

daz die Plathüeve mit kraft
that the Flatfeet with force

in sînem lande wæren.
in his land were.

mit disen starken mæren
with these strong tidings

wart er beswæret sêre.
became he burdened sorely.

do gewan der künic hêre
then won the king lordly

gên in vil schiere
against them very soon

von recken küene und ziere
of warriors bold and fine

in vil kurzlîchen tagen
in very few days

einen kreftigen magen
a mighty force

ûf ein heide, diu was breit.
on a heath, which was broad.

dar hâten sich diu her geleit.
there had themselves the hosts laid.

dâ muose ez durch nôt scheiden
there must it through need decide

zwischen den hern beiden
between the hosts both

daz urteil mit dem lebene.
the judgment with the life.

die Plathüeve vergebene
the Flatfeet in-vain

fuorten ir scharph geschütze.
carried their sharp shot.

ez wart in vil unnütze,
it became to-them very useless,

do der herzoge in den strît kam.
when the duke into the strife came.

des küniges vanen er dô nam
the king's banner he then took

und fuorte die vordern schar.
and led the foremost troop.

die Plathüeve kâmen gein im dar
the Flatfeet came against him there

mit grôzem übermuote gevarn
with great arrogance fared

und huoben sich mit den scharn
and raised themselves with the troops

4725 ûf ein ander: dô huop sich nôt.
upon one other: then rose itself distress.

dâ von lac dô maniger tôt.
there from lay then many-a-one dead.

Der herzoge und sîne man
The duke and his men

kâmen sie frumlîchen an.
came them valiantly at.

sie sluogen unde stâchen
they struck and stabbed

4730 unz sie die schar durchbrâchen:
until they the troop broke-through:

dô muosens in entwîchen.
then must-they from-them give-way.

sie wurden freislîchen
they became fearsomely

verhouwen an der walstat.
hewn on the battlefield.

ûf dem velde manic phat
on the field many-a path

4735 mit tôten lac bestrouwen:
with dead lay bestrewn:

des wart von lîbe gehouwen.
of-that became from life hewn.

der künic von Arimaspî
the king of Arimaspi

der stuont dem herzogen bî
he stood to-the duke by

frumlîch mit sîner schar.
valiantly with his troop.

sie sluogen die Plathüeve gar
they struck the Flatfeet wholly

daz in vil lützel entran.
that from-them very few escaped.

der herzoge den sige gewan.
the duke the victory won.

ez was im wol ergangen.
it was to-him well gone.

erslagen und gevangen
slain and captured

hâte er ir und sîne man
had he of-them and his men

daz nieman wol ertrahten kan.
what no-one well reckon can.

Der sige was gewunnen.
The victory was won.

die dâ wârn entrunnen
who there were escaped

fluhen ze bürge und ze walde,
fled to castle and to forest,

swâ sie sich mohten behalden.
wherever they themselves might keep.

der künic besaz die naht daz wal.
the king held the night the battlefield.

dâ was freude unde schal
there was joy and clamor

unz an den anderen tac.
until to the next day.

der künîc gebennes sich bewac.
the king of-giving himself resolved.

er hiez sîne lieben man
he bade his dear men

zuo im ze hove alle gân
to him to court all go

und bat sie danken dem herzogen
and bade them thank the duke

der im sô gar vür unbetrogen
who to-him so wholly for truly

hâte behalden al sîn êre.
had kept all his honor.

des begunde er in vil sêre
for-that began he him very sorely

loben durch sîn frümekeit.
to-praise for his valor.

er sprach 'jungelinc gemeit,
he spoke 'youth merry,

du hâst mir manlîche
thou hast to-me manfully

und alsô frumlîche
and so valiantly

êre unde lîp behalden.
honor and life kept.

du solt immer mêr gewalden
thou shalt ever more rule

mîns landes swaz dus haben wil.
of-my land whatever thou-of-it have wilt.

des sol ich dir lîhen alsô vil
of-that shall I to-thee lend so much

durch liebe die ich zuo dir hân
for love which I to thee have

daz du selbe maht wol hân
that thou self mayst well have

beide êre unde ruom.'
both honor and fame.'

er lêch im ein herzogentuom
he lent to-him a duchy

mit liuten und mit lande.
with people and with land.

sus lônte er dem wîgande.
thus rewarded he the fighter.

dô gab er sînen mannen,
then gave he to-his men,

ê daz sie schieden dannen,
before that they parted thence,

daz sie wurden unnôthaft
that they became free-of-need

und geladen mit grôzer kraft.
and loaded with great abundance.

grâve Wetzel sînen man
count Wetzel his man

den hiezen sie zehant dan
him bade they at-once thence

wîsen gwaltic dar în,
guide powerfully there in,

und im undertân sîn
and to-him subject be

daz volc gemeinlîche,
the folk in-common,

beide arme und rîche.
both poor and rich.

daz lobeten sie vil gerne.
that promised they very gladly.

der künic reit zuo Lûcerne:
the king rode to Lucerne:

sus was ein sîn burc genant.
thus was one his castle named.

dô fuorte man den wîgant
then led one the fighter

ûf sîn lant mit sînen man:
upon his land with his men:

dô was sîn dinc im wol ergân.
then was his thing to-him well gone.

XVII · THE EARS AND THE PYGMIES

Ernst rules his duchy generously with Wetzel. He defeats the Ears, whose ears reach their feet and serve them as clothing, and makes them pay tribute, then helps the tiny people of Prechami against the cranes that have driven them off their fields, and brings two of them home. The king of the Giants of Canaan demands tribute from Arimaspi, and Ernst urges the king to refuse.

Dô der herre daz lant gewan,
When the lord the land won,

dô machte er im sîne man
then made he to-himself his men

beide willic unde holt.
both willing and gracious.

er gap in silber unde golt
he gave to-them silver and gold

daz er nieman niht verzêch.
that he to-no-one anything refused.

er gap hin unde lêch
he gave away and lent

daz ieclîcher gerne nam.
what each gladly took.

des muost der helt vil lobesam
of-that must the hero very praiseworthy

sînen lantliuten allen
to-his countrymen all

von schulden wol gevallen,
by right well please,

und huoten sîner êre
and guarded his honor

mit triuwen immer mêre
with faith ever more

durch sîn grôze frümekeit.
for his great valor.

er dolde liep oder leit,
he suffered joy or sorrow,

des hâtens alle mit im phliht.
of-that had-they all with him share.

ouch versûmte sich der grâve niht:
also neglected himself the count not:

er hielt mit êrn ouch sîn gewalt.
he held with honors also his power.

des wurdens beide dô gezalt
of-that became-they both then counted

zen aller tiursten herren
among-the of-all worthiest lords

die sie nâhe und verren
whom they near and far

wisten in keinem lande.
knew in any land.

sie lebten gar âne schande.
they lived wholly without shame.

Uns tuot diu âventiure bekant
To-us makes the adventure known

daz Ernst der edele wîgant
that Ernst the noble fighter

hôrte sagen mære,
heard tell tidings,

wie ein wunderlîch volc wære
how a wondrous folk were

bî sînem lande gesezzen,
by his land settled,

gên tumpheit vermezzen,
toward folly daring,

dâ enebene bî dem mer.
there close by the sea.

die mohten haben michel her,
they might have great host,

swenne sie daz wolden hân.
whenever they that would have.

sie wârn ouch wunderlîch getân,
they were also wondrously made,

wol gewahsen, niht ze kranc.
well grown, not too weak.

in wârn diu ôren alsô lanc
to-them were the ears so long

daz sie in ûf die füeze giengen:
that they to-them upon the feet went:

dâ mite sie den lîp umviengen.
there with they the body wrapped.

sie truogen kein ander wât,
they wore no other clothing,

als uns daz mære gesagt hât:
as to-us the tale told has:

si getorsten wol vehten.
they dared well fight.

gelîche guoten knehten
like good knights

wâren sie in der gestalt.
were they in the shape.

der wart sît harte vil gevalt
of-them became afterward very many felled

von dem herzogen hêre.
by the duke lordly.

sie truogen scharphe gêre,
they carried sharp javelins,

lieht unde wol getân.
bright and well made.

dâ vor kunde niht gestân,
there before could nothing stand,

ez enmüese sîn verlorn.
unless-it must be lost.

sie hâten ûf den künic gesworn
they had upon the king sworn

und getân vil dicke grôzen schaden
and done very often great harm

und mit strîte überladen.
and with strife overloaded.

daz was in unze her vertragen.
that was to-them until here borne.

daz begunden im dô klagen
that began to-him then to-lament

die liute in sîme lande.
the people in his land.

die bâten in daz er daz wande.
they begged him that he that averted.

Dô Ernst diu mære vernam,
When Ernst the tidings heard,

dô sant der fürste lobesam
then sent the prince praiseworthy

zehant nâch allen sînen man,
at-once after all his men,

unz daz der herre gewan
until that the lord won

gegen in ein vil schœne her.
against them a very beautiful host.

er fuor nider bî dem mer
he fared down by the sea

und bat sich wîsen in daz lant.
and bade himself be-guided into the land.

dô hâten sich vil starke besant
then had themselves very strongly summoned

die Ôren in den zîten.
the Ears in the times.

sie wolden gerne strîten
they would gladly fight

mit Ernest dem herzogen.
with Ernst the duke.

daz wart niht langer ûf gezogen.
that became not longer up drawn.

sie gâhten gên im verre.
they hastened toward him far.

des engulten sie vil sêre
for-that paid they very sorely

des tages in dem strîte.
of-the day in the strife.

in sluogen wunden wîte
them struck wounds wide

mit swerten des herzogen man.
with swords the duke's men.

swelher dô niht entran,
whoever then not escaped,

der verlôs daz leben dâ zestunt.
he lost the life there at-once.

erslagen unde sêre erwunt
slain and sorely wounded

lac dô meistec ir bestiu maht.
lay then mostly their best might.

der strît werte unz an die naht.
the strife lasted until to the night.

der herzoge den sige erstreit.
the duke the victory won-by-fighting.

des wârn die sîne gemeit
of-that were the his merry

und fröweten sich des über al.
and rejoiced themselves of-it over all.

die naht besâzen sie daz wal.
the night held they the battlefield.

dô ez dô tagen began,
when it then to-dawn began,

dô sâhen sie vil manigen man
then saw they very many-a man

verhouwen in dem walbluot.
hewn in the battle-blood.

ez hâten die helde guot
it had the heroes good

schaden beidenthalp genomen.
harm on-both-sides taken.

der herzoge enwolde dannen komen
the duke not-would thence come

ê er mit ellenthafter hant
before he with valiant hand

dez liut über al daz lant
the people over all the land

über kurz und über lanc
over short and over long

alsô gewalteclîch betwanc
so mightily subdued

daz sime den zins sît gâben
that they-to-him the tribute afterward gave

und herschildes phlâgen
and army-service took-care-of

swar er wolde varn bî dem mer.
wherever he would fare by the sea.

dô fuorte er wider sîn her
then led he back his host

heim ze sînem lande.
home to his land.

sîner wîgande
of-his fighters

hâte er verlorn ein teil.
had he lost a part.

der herzoge hâte ein guot heil
the duke had a good luck

daz er allewege den sige nam
that he always the victory took

swa er ze volcwîge kam.
wherever he to battle came.

Do er ze hûs kam wider dan,
When he to house came back thence,

er was ein harte frô man.
he was a very glad man.

er machte eine wirtschaft
he made a feast

sînen liuten mit grôzer kraft.
for-his people with great abundance.

er gap in schatz und gewant.
he gave to-them treasure and clothing.

im wart gesaget daz ein lant
to-him became told that a land

im ouch dâ nâhe læge bî,
to-him also there near lay by,

daz was genant Prechamî:
that was named Prechami:

dâ wârn sô kleiniu liutelîn
there were so small little-people

daz sie niht kleiner dorften sîn.
that they not smaller needed be.

ez was ein künicrîche
it was a kingdom

und lebten vorhteclîche,
and lived fearfully,

als ich iu hie bediuten sol.
as I to-you here explain shall.

ir lant was alzît kraniche vol:
their land was always of-cranes full:

die hâten in daz lant benomen
they had from-them the land taken

daz sie ze velde entorsten komen.
that they to field dared-not come.

sie muosen in starken walden sîn
they must in strong forests be

dâ sich diu kleinen liutelîn
where themselves the small little-people

den vogelen kûme erwerten.
from-the birds hardly defended.

ich sage iu wes sie sich nerten:
I tell to-you whereby they themselves fed:

der eir diu sie verstâlen
of-the eggs which they stole

den kranichen zallen mâlen,
from-the cranes at-all times,

swaz si ir erslahen kunden.
whatever they of-them slay could.

swaz sie der jungen funden,
whatever they of-the young found,

die wârn von in verlorn gar.
they were by them lost wholly.

niht anders was ir lîpnar
not other was their victuals

und daz sie bûten in den walden.
and that they dwelt in the forests.

sie kunden sich niender enthalden:
they could themselves nowhere sustain:

sie wârn gein in gar âne wer,
they were against them wholly without defense,

ez wære dan daz sie ein her
unless-it were then that they a host

gên in ze strîte bræhten
against them to strife brought

und mit in danne væhten.
and with them then fought.

swaz sie ir in den stunden
whatever they of-them at the hours

slahen und vâhen kunden,
slay and catch could,

die teilten sie dan gelîche
them divided they then alike

under arme und under rîche,
among poor and among rich,

unze in aber ein glücke kam.
until to-them again a luck came.

do der herzoge diu mære vernam,
when the duke the tidings heard,

hundert ritter er gewan
hundred knights he won

und fuoren in eim schiffe dan.
and fared in a ship thence.

dô kâmen die wîgande
then came the fighters

zuo in ze lande
to them to land

daz sie erfuoren diu mære
that they found-out the tidings

wie daz liut getân wære.
how the people made were.

dô giengen die helde balt
then went the heroes bold

in einen kreftigen walt
into a mighty forest

und funden ir vil an einer stat.
and found of-them many at one place.

der herzoge im dô sagen bat
the duke to-himself then tell bade

welhez ir künic wære.
which of-them king were.

do gelobte in der helt mære
then promised to-them the hero famous

daz sie ân angest solden sîn:
that they without fear should be:

'daz habt ûf die triuwe mîn.'
'that have upon the faith my.'

des wurden sie dô alle frô.
of-that became they then all glad.

sie brâhten in zir herren dô:
they brought him to-their lord then:

der kustes alle besunder.
he kissed-them all separately.

dâ was keiner under,
there was none among,

er enphienges lieplîche,
unless-he received-him lovingly,

er wære arm oder rîche:
he were poor or rich:

daz wizzet vür ungelogen.
that know for unlied.

der künic dem herzogen
the king to-the duke

kûme an den gürtel langen kunde.
hardly to the girdle reach could.

dô bat er sich an der stunde
then begged he himself at the hour

wîsen da er daz gevügele sach.
be-guided where he the birds saw.

ê daz dô geschach,
before that then happened,

dô hete der künic sich besant
then had the king himself summoned

dâ er sîne liute vant
where he his people found

dâ bî in sîme rîche.
there by in his realm.

sie kâmen im algelîche
they came to-him all-alike

und wîsten in an die stat,
and guided him to the place,

als er sie dâ vor bat.
as he them there before bade.

sie funden gevügeles alsô vil
they found of-birds so many

in solher mâze zil
in such measure's goal

deiz nieman kunde ertrahten
that-it no-one could think-out

noch volleclîch erahten.
nor fully reckon.

Die kraniche fluhen niht ir her. 4965
The cranes fled not their host.

sie sazten sich manlîch ze wer:
they set themselves manfully to defense:

sie wâren liute wol gewan
they were people well accustomed

und wolden fliehen niht dan.
and would flee not thence.

dô bestuonden sie sie vaste.
then attacked they them hard.

von dem wirte und von dem gaste 4970
by the host and by the guest

wart ir erslagen alsô vil,
became of-them slain so many,

vür wâr ich iu daz sagen wil,
for true I to-you that tell will,

daz weder wîp noch man
that neither woman nor man

des wunders ende niht mac hân.
of-the wonder end not may have.

sie wârn ein teil errochen. 4975
they were a part avenged.

sus lâgens dâ sehs wochen
thus lay-they there six weeks

daz sie der künic bat belîben,
that them the king begged remain,

dazs im die kraniche vertrîben
that-they for-him the cranes drive-out

hulfen von dem lande.
helped from the land.

dô sluogen ir die wîgande
then struck of-them the fighters

dâ von daz lant erfüllet wart.
there from the land filled became.

des edelen herzogen vart
the noble duke's journey

kam den liuten ze fromen.
came to-the people to profit.

der künic bat in vür sich komen
the king bade him before himself come

und bat den helt mære
and begged the hero famous

daz er immer bî im wære:
that he ever by him were:

er wolde im sînen gwalt lân
he would to-him his power leave

und gerne wesen undertân.
and gladly be subject.

dô sprach der tiurlîche degen
then spoke the precious thane

'herre, ich mac sîn niht gephlegen.
'lord, I may of-it not take-care.

got lâze iu iwer lant sælic sîn:
God let to-you your land blessed be:

ez ist niht an den muozen mîn.
it is not at the leisure my.

ich muoz ze lande kêren.
I must to land turn.

nu sult ir mich dâ mit êren
now shall you me there with honor

daz ir mir der liute ein teil geben.
that you to-me of-the people a part give.

und wizzet, herre, die wîle ich leben,
and know, lord, the while I live,

sô bin ich iuwerm dienst verselt.'
so am I to-your service given.'

der künic sprach 'swie vil ir welt,
the king spoke 'however many you will,

die sint iu, herre, von mir bereit.'
they are to-you, lord, by me ready.'

dô nam der recke vil gemeit
then took the warrior very merry

zwên, die wâren siuberlîch,
two, who were neat,

wol gestalt und hêrlîch,
well shaped and lordly,

ûf die sîn gesinde riet.
upon whom his household counseled.

ê daz er dannen schiet,
before that he thence parted,

der künic im dancte sêre
the king him thanked sorely

der vil grôzen êre
for-the very great honor

der er im erboten hâte.
which he to-him offered had.

urloup nam er dô drâte
leave took he then quickly

ze Arimaspî in daz lant.
to Arimaspi into the land.

dar kam der edele wîgant
thither came the noble fighter

gevarn frôlîchen:
fared joyfully:

des lopte er got den rîchen.
for-that praised he God the rich.

Nu was gesezzen niht verre dan
Now was settled not far thence

ein freislîch volc, hiez Cânâan,
a fearsome folk, called Canaan,

bî Arimaspî dem lande.
by Arimaspi the land.

daz wâren wîgande:
they were fighters:

Risen wâren sie genant.
Giants were they named.

die heten betwungen manic lant
they had subdued many-a land

daz ez in den zins galt.
that it to-them the tribute paid.

vil manic recke balt
very many-a warrior bold

muost den lîp von in verliesen
must the life by them lose

und den grimmen tôt kiesen:
and the grim death choose:

der in den zins niht wolde geben,
who to-them the tribute not would give,

der verlôs von in daz leben.
he lost by them the life.

dem künige von Cânâan
to-the king of Canaan

rieten alle sîne man
counseled all his men

daz er sînen boten sande
that he his messenger sent

ze Arimaspî dem lande
to Arimaspi the land

und dem künege enbüte disiu mære,
and to-the king sent-word these tidings,

als liep als im daz leben wære
as dear as to-him the life were

und daz er belibe bî dem lande,
and that he remained by the land,

daz er im den zins sande
that he to-him the tribute sent

und selbe balde zuo im kæme,
and self quickly to him came,

daz er sîn lant von im næme,
that he his land from him took,

und im schiere würde undertân.
and to-him soon became subject.

des wolde er keinen rât hân,
of-that would he no counsel have,

und wære im daz harte swære
and were to-him that very heavy

daz er so lange frî gewesen wære.
that he so long free been were.

Der bote was ein starker Gîgant.
The messenger was a strong Giant.

er kam zArimaspî in daz lant
he came to-Arimaspi into the land

vür den künic rîche
before the king rich

und sagete im gezogenlîche
and told to-him courteously

als im sîn herre daz gebôt.
as to-him his lord that commanded.

dô vorhte er die starken nôt,
then feared he the strong distress,

obe in die Gîgande
if him the Giants

suochten ze lande,
sought to land,

daz möhte er in niht erwern
that might he them not ward-off

noch den lîp vor in genern,
nor the life before them save,

ern müese in dar ûz entrinnen
unless-he must from-them there out escape

oder mit ir guoten minnen
or with their good love

mit eigen lant von in bestân.
with own land from them stand.

der künic besande sîne man,
the king summoned his men,

die besten die er hâte.
the best whom he had.

die kâmen ze sînem râte.
they came to his council.

herzoge Ernest kam ouch dar.
duke Ernst came also thither.

dô sagte in der künic gar
then told to-them the king wholly

der Gîgande botschaft.
the Giants' message.

'sie hânt alsô grôze kraft
'they have so great strength

daz in kan nieman widerstân:
that them can no-one withstand:

des muoz ich grôze sorge hân.' 5060
of-that must I great care have.'

Dô rieten im alle sîne man,
Then counseled to-him all his men,

(die dûhte niht sô guot getân)
(whom seemed nothing so well done)

daz er im den zins sande,
that he to-him the tribute sent,

daz sie in ir lande
that they in their land

fride vor in müesen hân. 5065
peace from them must have.

dô sprach der herzoge sân
then spoke the duke at-once

'ir sprechet wider iuwern êren,
'you speak against your honors,

daz ir râtet iuwerm hêren
that you counsel to-your lord

hie heime sîne schande.
here at-home his shame.

ez tæte in mînem lande 5070
it would-do in my land

vil ungerne kein man
very unwillingly any man

daz er sîme genôz würd undertân:
that he to-his peer became subject:

er læge ê tôt mit êren.
he would-lie rather dead with honors.

ich kan iuch baz gelêren.
I can you better teach.

enbiet dem künige hin wider:
send-word to-the king thither back:

er sî dar zuo ze nider
he be there to too low

daz ir soldet iuwer lant
that you should your land

ze zinse enphân von sîner hant:
as tribute receive from his hand:

daz sî ein vil tumber wân.
that be a very foolish notion.

welle er frumen und êre hân,
(if)-will he profit and honor have,

so gewahe der rede nimmer mêre.
so mention of-the speech never more.

ir nemet im alle sîne êre.
you take from-him all his honor.

welle er iuch dan dar über hern,
(if)-will he you then there over harry,

ir wellet iur lant alsô wern
you will your land so defend

daz im der zins vil sûre wirt
that to-him the tribute very sour becomes

und im nimmer mê verswirt
and to-him never more heals

beide zins und ouch der solt
both tribute and also the pay

den er uns hie habe geholt.'
which he from-us here have fetched.'

The Giant messenger reports Ernst's defiance, and the Giants march with steel bars. Ernst fights them in a forest where they cannot swing their bars, kills three hundred, and captures a wounded giant whom he heals. After six years, he sails secretly for Moorland with the merchants of a ship blown ashore, taking his strange companions with him.

Des was der künic vil frô.
Of-that was the king very glad.

nâch dem boten sande er dô
after the messenger sent he then

und gâbte in mit êren.
and gifted him with honors.

er sprach 'du maht wol wider kêren
he spoke 'thou mayst well back turn

und sage dînem herren daz
and tell to-thy lord that

daz er sich gên mir bedenke baz
that he himself toward me bethink better

mit minneclîchen dingen.
with loving things.

wil er schatz an mir ertwingen,
(if)-will he treasure from me compel,

daz ist ein vil tumber wân.
that is a very foolish notion.

er sol sich niht ze sêre lân
he shall himself not too sorely rely

an mîn silber und an mîn golt.
on my silver and on my gold.

wil er mir sus wesen holt,
(if)-will he to-me thus be gracious,

daz wil ich umb in verdienen gerne.
that will I for him deserve gladly.

stêt ez im dan niht zenberne
(if)-stands it to-him then not to-forgo

und wil dar über mîn vîent sîn,
and will there over my enemy be,

sô sage im ûf die triuwe mîn,
so tell him upon the faith my,

ez muoz in kosten tiure.
it must him cost dearly.

ich gibe im solhe stiure
I give to-him such tax

von mînem frîen lande
from my free land

daz er den schaden und die schande
that he the harm and the shame

nimmer wol verklagen mac
never well lament-away may

unze an sînes endes tac.'
until to his end's day.'

Dô der bote daz vernam,
When the messenger that heard,

wider ze lande er balde kam,
back to land he quickly came,

dem künic er sagt diu mære.
to-the king he told the tidings.

daz was im harte swære
that was to-him very heavy

daz dem künic von Arimaspî
that by-the king of Arimaspi

solh türstekeit wonde bî
such boldness dwelt by

daz im daz versmâhen solde.
that to-him that disdain should.

obe er in begnâden wolde
if he him favor would

daz er im zins solde geben,
that he to-him tribute should give,

dar umbe er in lieze leben,
there for he him let live,

daz diuhte in gar missetân.
that seemed to-him wholly misdone.

dô sprâchen sîne râtman
then spoke his counselors

'edele künic hêre,
'noble king lordly,

nu zornet niht ze sêre:
now rage not too sorely:

wir schaffen wol sîn gemach.'
we make well his comfort.'

der bote antwurte unde sprach
the messenger answered and spoke

'sît er dich sus versmâhet hât,
'since he thee thus disdained has,

du solt in suochen, deist mîn rât,
thou shalt him seek, that-is my counsel,

in sînem lande: des ist zît,
in his land: of-that is time,

und viht mit im einen strît:
and fight with him a strife:

du solt dich in sehen lân.
thou shalt thyself to-him see let.

er wære dir gern undertân,
he were to-thee gladly subject,

wan ein wênegez mennelîn,
except a tiny little-man,

daz tet vor im die rede sîn
who made before him the speech his

sô rehte frümeclîche,
so rightly valiantly,

und obe im alliu rîche
and if to-him all realms

dienstlîche wæren undertân,
in-service were subject,

er möht niht manlîcher geredet hân.
he might not more-manfully spoken have.

ê daz er von dem râte schiet,
before that he from the council parted,

dem künige erz gar widerriet
to-the king he-it wholly counseled-against

daz er dir iht würde gehôrsam.
that he to-thee at-all became obedient.

sîn lîp ist vil lobesam:
his body is very praiseworthy:

ich gesach sô wênigez nie.
I saw so tiny never.

ez gêt mir kûme an daz knie.
it goes to-me hardly to the knee.

daz sach ich vür den künic gân
that saw I before the king go

und alsô degenlîche stân
and so thanely stand

an des küniges rât
at the king's council

daz mich des gewundert hât
that me of-that wondered has

und noch wundert sêre.
and still wonders sorely.

erwürbest du dâ niht mêre
should-win thou there not more

wan daz ez kæme in dîn gewalt,'
except that it came into thy power,'

sprach der mære degen balt,
spoke the famous thane bold,

'du hetest die reise wol bewant:
'thou hadst the journey well spent:

nu hebe dich schiere in daz lant.'
now raise thyself soon into the land.'

Dem künige was daz ungemach
To-the king was that vexation

daz er wider den zins sô sêre sprach.
that he against the tribute so sorely spoke.

er swuor des vil sêre
he swore of-that very sorely

daz er nimmer mêre
that he never more

langer wolde belîben,
longer would remain,

er wolde in vertrîben
he would him drive-out

oder slahen oder vâhen
or slay or catch

oder an einen boum hâhen:
or on a tree hang:

sîn lîp müese lîden schande.
his body must suffer shame.

er gewan von sînem lande
he won from his land

tûsent risen sîner man.
thousand giants of-his men.

mit den huop er sich dan
with them raised he himself thence

gên Arimaspî in daz lant.
toward Arimaspi into the land.

dô truoc ein ieclîch Gîgant
then carried an each Giant

ein stâhelîne stange,
a steel bar,

grôze unde lange:
great and long:

dâ mite woldens vehten.
there with would-they fight.

sie huoben grôz gebrehten
they raised great noise

über velt und über heide:
over field and over heath:

daz wart in sider ze leide.
that became to-them afterward to sorrow.

Do die von Arimaspî heten vernomen,
When those of Arimaspi had heard,

daz die Gîgande wolden komen
that the Giants would come

zuo ir lande mit gewalde,
to their land with force,

dô besanden sie sich balde
then summoned they themselves quickly

unde schuofen ouch ir wer
and made also their defense

gên dem kreftigen her,
against the mighty host,

als in der herzoge riet.
as to-them the duke counseled.

dô mante er alle die diet
then urged he all the folk

daz si hæten keine forhte.
that they had no fear.

er schuof daz man in worhte
he made that one to-them wrought

spieze swert unde sper.
pikes swords and spears.

‘nu sult ir alle,’ sprach er,
‘now shall you all,’ spoke he,

varn alse ich dâ var.
fare as I there fare.

wir suln gegen in dar
we shall toward them thither

mit unser wer balde
with our defense quickly

komen zuo dem walde
come to the forest

dâ sie durch sulen varn.
where they through shall fare.

dâ mugen wir uns vor in bewarn.
there may we ourselves from them guard.

wir suln in den walt gân.
we shall into the forest go.

aldâ suln wir bestân:
there shall we withstand:

dâ mugen wir den lîp behalden.
there may we the life keep.

dâ mugens der stangen niht gewalden.
there may-they of-the bars not wield.

ir sol dâ vor uns sô vil bestân:
of-them shall there before us so many stand:

dâ mugen wirs stechen unde slân
there may we-them stab and strike

daz sie geriuwet diu vart
that them rues the journey

daz ir ie gedâht wart.'
that of-it ever thought became.'

Die Gîgande kâmen an den walt.
The Giants came to the forest.

dâ funden sie die helde balt
there found they the heroes bold

harte kuonlîche gar.
very boldly wholly.

als sie dô wurden gewar
when they then became aware

daz sie sie wolden bestên,
that they them would attack,

die risen liezen an sie gên
the giants let at them go

mit ir stangen freislîch.
with their bars fearsome.

der herzoge entweich hinder sich
the duke gave-way behind himself

under die boume mit sîner schar:
under the trees with his troop:

dâ wâren sie sicher gar.
there were they safe wholly.

sie sluogens niden an diu bein:
they struck-them below on the legs:

des herzogen wîsheit wol schein;
the duke's wisdom well shone;

des die risen muosen misseniezen.
of-that the giants must ill-profit.

mit spern und mit spiezen
with spears and with pikes

sie ir vil manigen valten
they of-them very many-a-one felled

daz sie den walt erschalten,
that they the forest made-resound,

unde vielen von ir swære,
and fell from their heaviness,

als ein boum dâ gevallen wære.
as a tree there fallen were.

sie werten sie mit swerten
they warded them with swords

zinses des sie gerten,
of-tribute which they desired,

daz sie in niht vertruogen.
that they them not bore.

der irn sie dô sluogen
of-those of-them they then struck

âne ir schaden ein michel teil.
without their harm a great part.

dô hâten sie grôz unheil,
then had they great misfortune,

die risen mit ir genôzen.
the giants with their peers.

sie nâmen schaden grôzen
they took harm great

von dem herzogen an der stunt.
from the duke at the hour.

vil maniger sêre wart wunt
very many-a-one sorely became wounded

die man dannen muose tragen.
whom one thence must carry.

dô lac vor in ze tôde erslagen
then lay before them to death slain

driu hundert risen kreftic.
three hundred giants mighty.

die andern wurden fluhtic.
the others became fleeing.

dô was der strît ergangen.
then was the strife ended.

sie mohten der stangen
they might the bars

von den boumen niht geziehen.
from the trees not draw.

dô begunden sie vliehen
then began they to-flee

wider gegen Cânânê.
back toward Canaan.

der herzoge enbeit dô niht mê:
the duke waited then not more:

do er behielt die walstat,
when he held the battlefield,

al die sîne er dô bat,
all the his he then bade,

dô sie begunden entwîchen,
when they began to-give-way,

harte flîzeclîchen,
very diligently,

daz sie im einen hulfen vâhen.
that they to-him one helped catch.

einen starken risen sie dô sâhen,
a strong giant they then saw,

der mohte niht gefliehen.
who might not flee.

den begundens umbe ziehen,
him began-they about to-draw,

wan der was wunt sêre.
for he was wounded sorely.

dô nôtens in noch mêre:
then pressed-they him still more:

mit spern und mit spiezen
with spears and with pikes

sie in des niht erliezen
they him of-that not released

unz er die stangen muose geben.
until he the bar must give.

der herzoge liez in dô leben
the duke let him then live

und bevalh in sînen mannen.
and commended him to-his men.

die fuorten in dô dannen
they led him then thence

mit freuden heim ze lande.
with joys home to land.

dem künige der Gîgande
to-the king of-the Giants

was harte misselungen.
was very ill-succeeded.

den sige hâte errungen
the victory had won

der künic von Arimaspî.
the king of Arimaspi.

sît saz er ledic unde frî
afterward sat he quit and free

vor in in sînem lande
before them in his land

daz im die Gîgande
that him the Giants

gesuochten nimmer mêre:
sought never more:

sus behielt der künic sîn êre.
thus kept the king his honor.

Der künic was des siges frô.
The king was of-the victory glad.

dannen huop er sich dô
thence raised he himself then

mit freuden heim ze lande.
with joys home to land.

sîne boten er vür sande
his messengers he before sent

die da heime sagten mære
who there at-home told tidings

daz in sô wol wære
that to-them so well were

an den Gîganden gelungen.
against the Giants succeeded.

die alden mit den jungen
the old with the young

wâren freuden unverhert
were of-joys unharried

daz sie sich heten sô wol erwert
that they themselves had so well defended

den liuten starc unde lanc.
from-the people strong and long.

des sagten sie dô alle danc
for-that said they then all thanks

dem herzogen Erniste.
to-the duke Ernst.

sie genuzzen sîner liste
they profited-from his wiles

daz sie den sige nâmen.
that they the victory took.

dô sie ze hûse kâmen,
when they to house came,

der künic machte ein wirtschaft
the king made a feast

durch der grôzen liebe kraft
for the great love's strength

die er zem herzogen truoc.
which he to-the duke bore.

sie buten êren genuoc
they offered of-honors enough

Ernest dem hêren
to-Ernst the lordly-one

der in sô hôher êren
who them so high honors

gehalf und solhes ruomes.
helped and such fame.

sîns starken wîstuomes
of-his strong wisdom

si genuzzen alle gemeine.
they profited all in-common.

golt und edel gesteine
gold and noble gems

gab im vil der künic guot.
gave to-him much the king good.

dô huop sich dan der hôchgemuot
then raised himself thence the high-spirited-one

aber wider in sîn lant.
again back into his land.

da enphiengen wol den wîgant
there received well the fighter

beide man unde wîp:
both men and women:

er was in liep als der lîp.
he was to-them dear as the life.

Sus was er wider komen dan.
Thus was he back come thence.

er was ein harte frô man
he was a very glad man

des risen der dô wunt lac.
of-the giant who then wounded lay.

mit flîze sîn der fürste phlac.
with diligence of-him the prince took-care.

er bant in zallen stunden
he bound him at-all hours

und heilte im sîne wunden
and healed for-him his wounds

unz er vil wol wart gesunt.
until he very well became healthy.

der herre liez im werden kunt
the lord let to-him become known

daz er im von herzen liep was.
that he to-him from heart dear was.

dô der rise gar genas,
when the giant wholly recovered,

der herre kleitte wol den man
the lord clothed well the man

und liez in ledeclîchen gân
and let him freely go

swar er selbe wolde.
whither he self would.

er sprach daz er nimmer solde
he spoke that he never should

von dem herzogen komen.
from the duke come.

er nam sîn sît vil grôzen fromen,
he took from-him afterward very great profit,

der edel fürste mære.
the noble prince famous.

man saget uns daz er wære
one tells to-us that he were

niht wan fünfzehn jâr alt.
not but fifteen years old.

noch was niender der helt balt
still was nowhere the hero bold

gewahsen zeinem manne.
grown to-a man.

ime walde stuont kein tanne
in-the forest stood no fir

diu im zuo der stunde
which to-him at the hour

an daz knie gelangen kunde.
to the knee reach could.

er was grôz und freissam.
he was great and fearsome.

nu het der fürste lobesam
now had the prince praiseworthy

in sînem hove den Gîgant
in his court the Giant

und zwên von Perkamêren lant,
and two from Prechami land,

vil Ôren und manigen Plathuof.
many Ears and many-a Flatfoot.

der fürste in flîzeclîche schuof
the prince to-them diligently made

swaz sie haben solden
whatever they have should

und mêre dan sie wolden.
and more than they would.

er hâte sie vür im durch wunder.
he had them before him for wonder.

disiu seltsæniu kunder
these strange wonders

vertriben im vil dicke sît
passed for-him very often afterward

mit kurzwîle die lange zît.
with pastime the long time.

Also was der fürste, daz ist wâr,
So was the prince, that is true,

in dem lande wol sehs jâr
in the land well six years

daz er phlac grôzer êre.
that he took-care of-great honor.

eines morgens gienc der hêre
one morning went the lord

durch kurzwîl vür sîn burc stân.
for pastime before his castle stand.

er sach ein schif in d'habe gân:
he saw a ship into the-harbor go:

daz was komen von Môrlant.
that was come from Moorland.

dô frâgte sie der wîgant
then asked them the fighter

umbe niuwiu mære,
about new tidings,

und wes daz schif wære.
and whose the ship were.

sie sagten dem wîgande
they told to-the fighter

'wir sîn von Môrlande
'we are from Moorland

ûz nâch koufes site gevarn,
out after trade's custom fared,

und kunden nie daz bewarn,
and could never that guard,

uns habe der wint geslagen her.
us has the wind struck hither.

wir sîn gar ân unser ger
we are wholly without our desire

komen her in ditz lant.
come hither into this land.

nu sult ir, edeler wîgant,
now shall you, noble fighter,

uns durch got genædic wesen,
to-us for God gracious be,

daz ir uns, herre, lât genesen,
that you us, lord, let survive,

daz wir behalden daz leben.
that we keep the life.

dar umbe wellen wir iu geben
there for will we to-you give

unsers guotes alsô vil:
of-our goods so much:

des setzen wir iu kein zil
of-that set we to-you no goal

wan als ez an iuwern gnâden stât.
except as it at your grace stands.

wir biten iuch daz ir uns lât
we beg you that you us let

wan des wir uns des hungers wern
only what we ourselves of-the hunger defend

und den lîp kûme hin heim ernern.'
and the life barely thither home save.'

Do er der mære künde gewan,
When he of-the tidings knowledge won,

dô wiste wol der küene man
then knew well the bold man

wie ez umb daz lant wære gestalt.
how it about the land were shaped.

dô frâgte in der recke balt
then asked them the warrior bold

ob iht urliuges dâ wære.
whether at-all of-war there were.

dô sagten sie im diu mære
then told they to-him the tidings

wie ez allez was gewant.
how it all was turned.

sie sprâchen ‘von Babilône lant
they spoke ‘from Babylon land

des küniges wîgande
the king’s fighters

tuont in dem Môrlande
do in the Moorland

dem künige dicke grôzen schaden.
to-the king often great harm.

sie hânt in dicke überladen
they have him often overloaded

mit strîte vil sêre,
with strife very sorely,

daz der künic hêre
that the king lordly

von der kristenheite kêrte
from the Christendom turned

und ir ungelouben mêrte
and their unbelief increased

mit der heidenschefte.
with the heathendom.

mit grôzer ritterschefte
with great knighthood

koments uns dicke nâhen.
come-they to-us often near.

waz kan sie daz vervâhen?
what can them that avail?

sie müezen flühteclîchen
they must fleeingly

ûz dem lande dicke entwîchen
out-of the land often give-way

von des landes krefte
from the land's force

und des küniges ritterschefte.
and the king's knighthood.

er kumet von sîme gelouben niht.'
he comes from his faith not.'

do er vernam dise geschiht,
when he heard this happening,

dô frâgte er die koufman
then asked he the merchants

ob sie in möhten helfen dan
whether they him might help thence

verborgen unde stille.
hidden and quiet.

'ez was lange mîn wille
'it was long my will

daz ich ze Jêrusalêm wolde komen.'
that I to Jerusalem would come.'

ob sie im dar möhten fromen,
if they him thither might further,

er lônde es in mit guote.
he rewarded it to-them with goods.

im wære ouch des ze muote,
to-him were also of-that in mind,

sît er urliuges dâ funde,
since he of-war there found,

daz er etelîche stunde
that he some hours

bî dem künige dâ belibe,
by the king there remained,

unz er der zît ein wîle vertribe
until he of-the time a while passed

daz er ze Jêrusalêm möhte komen.
that he to Jerusalem might come.

dô sie die rede heten vernomen,
when they the speech had heard,

des wârn die koufman vil frô.
of-that were the merchants very glad.

mit triuwen lobten sie im dô,
with faith promised they to-him then,

sie volgten sînem râte.
they followed his counsel.

eins âbendes spâte
one evening late

hiez der vil küene man
bade the very bold man

daz beste daz er mohte hân
the best that he might have

von silber und von golde
of silver and of gold

und an andern rîchen solde,
and in other rich pay,

phelle und sîden gewant,
brocade and silk clothing,

swaz er des besten gevant,
whatever he of-the best found,

berlîn und edel gesteine,
pearls and noble gems,

allez daz gemeine
all that in-common

swaz man genützen mohte
whatever one use might

und im ze füeren tohte,
and to-him to carry availed,

swaz im dar über geviel,
whatever to-him there over pleased,

daz kam allez in den kiel
that came all into the keel

mit flîze vil wol verholn.
with diligence very well hidden.

ouch brâhte er dar ûf verstoln
also brought he there upon stolen

den risen und alle sîniu wunder
the giant and all his wonders

brâhte er allez besunder
brought he all separately

ûf daz schif zuo den môren:
upon the ship to the Moors:

Plathüeve Prechamî und Ôren.
Flatfeet Prechami and Ears.

dô daz allez was getân,
when that all was done,

dannoch hâte er zwêne man
still had he two men

liep von Arimaspî.
dear from Arimaspi.

die wâren im heimlîch bî:
they were to-him secretly by:

die bat er varn mit im dar.
them bade he fare with him thither.

des wârens willeclîche gar,
of-that were-they willingly wholly,

wan er in ze herren wol geviel.
for he to-them as lord well pleased.

daz was allez an den kiel
that was all onto the keel

vil tougenlîche komen.
very secretly come.

dô hâte er zwêne und zwêne genomen
then had he two and two taken

die liute die er fuorte dan,
the people whom he led thence,

als ich iu ê gesaget hân.
as I to-you before told have.

XIX · MOORLAND AND JERUSALEM

The Christian king of Moorland welcomes Ernst, who fights for him against the heathen king of Babylon, captures him, and sees him healed and reconciled. Ernst goes with the king of Babylon to his court, and after a month the king sends him on to Jerusalem with an escort, where he gives half his wonders at the Holy Sepulcher and fights the heathens for more than a year.

Sie wâren stolz unde frô.
They were proud and glad.

ir segel zugen sie vil hô
their sails drew they very high

und fuoren frôlîche sint.
and fared joyfully afterward.

dô kam in ouch der beste wint
then came to-them also the best wind

den ie liute gewunnen.
which ever people won.

alsô was der helt entrunnen
so was the hero escaped

von dem lant mit sînen mannen.
from the land with his men.

dô treip sie der wint dannen
then drove them the wind thence

ze Môrlande in eine habe.
to Moorland into a harbor.

aldâ giengen sie dô abe,
there went they then off,

der herzoge und sîne man.
the duke and his men.

herberge man in gewan:
lodging one for-them got:

dar inne se dô behielten
there in they then kept

swaz sie dô guotes wielten.
whatever they then of-goods held.

dô wîsten sie die koufman
then guided them the merchants

ze einer bürge wol getân,
to a castle well made,

dâ sie den künic funden,
where they the king found,

und sagten im an den stunden
and told to-him at the hours

wer der herre wære,
who the lord were,

und ouch diu andern mære
and also the other tidings

wâ sie in hæten genomen
where they him had taken

und wie sie dar wæren komen:
and how they thither were come:

daz sagten sie im al besunder.
that told they to-him all separately.

der herzoge nam al sîn wunder
the duke took all his wonders

und kam vür den künic hêren.
and came before the king lordly.

der enphienc in wol mit êren.
he received him well with honors.

‘du solt mir willekomen sîn
‘thou shalt to-me welcome be

mit dem ingesinde dîn.’
with the household thy.’

des dancte im der fürste frî.
for-that thanked him the prince free.

sîn rise stuont im nâhe bî
his giant stood to-him near by

und ander sîn gesinde.
and other his household.

des wunderte vil swinde
of-that wondered very mightily

den künic und alle sîne man.
the king and all his men.

sie muosen im des bî gestân
they must to-him of-that by stand

und des mit wârheite jehen,
and of-that with truth say,

sie heten sô seltsæns niht gesehen
they had so strange nothing seen

noch zer werlde solhes niht vernomen:
nor in-the world such nothing heard:

in was liep daz er dar was komen.
to-them was dear that he thither was come.

Dô bat der ellende man
Then begged the exiled man

den künic daz er in wolde lân
the king that he him would let

in sînem dienste dâ belîben,
in his service there remain,

der zît ein teil vertrîben,
of-the time a part pass,

unz er vernæme diu mære
until he heard the tidings

wie sînem geverte wære
how for-his journey were

ze Jêrusalêm in daz lant.
to Jerusalem into the land.

dô sagte im der wîgant
then told to-him the fighter

allez sîn geverte gar.
all his journey wholly.

obe er im gehulfe dar,
if he him helped thither,

daz wolde er dienen sêre.
that would he serve sorely.

dô sprach der künic hêre
then spoke the king lordly

'ir sult mir des getrûwen:
'you shall me of-that trust:

welt ir nu mit mir bûwen
(if)-will you now with me dwell

hie in mînem lande
here in my land

mit iuwerm gîgande,
with your giant,

ich behielde iu allez iuwer leben
I would-keep for-you all your life

und wolde iu mînes landes geben
and would to-you of-my land give

daz beide ir und iuwer man
that both you and your men

mit êren möht bî mir bestân.
with honors might by me stand.

daz leiste ich, welt ir, hie zehant.'
that perform I, (if)-will you, here at-once.'

des gnâdete im der wîgant
for-that thanked him the fighter
daz er im dise êre erbôt.
that he to-him this honor offered.
er sprach ‘des ist noch unnôt:
he spoke ‘of-that is still unneeded:
ich hân ez noch verdienet niht.
I have it still deserved not.
diene ich iu ab immer iht
(if)-serve I to-you but ever aught
daz iu mit êren mac gezemen,
which to-you with honors may befit,
dar nâch mac ouch ich mit êren nemen
there after may also I with honors take
swaz ir mir danne genâden tuot.’
whatever you to-me then of-grace do.’
do enthielt in der künic guot
then maintained him the king good
mit flîze als er wær sîn kint.
with diligence as-if he were his child.
vil wol verdiente er daz sint.
very well deserved he that afterward.
Dô kâmen dem künige mære
Then came to-the king tidings
daz der künic von Babilonje wære
that the king of Babylon were
komen gên sînem lande
come toward his land
mit manigem wîgande.
with many-a fighter.

er fuorte ûz der heidenschaft
he led out-of the heathendom

alsô starke ritterschaft
so strong knighthood

daz sich ir nieman mohte erwern.
that himself of-them no-one might defend.

betwingen unde verhern
subdue and lay-waste

wolde er gar die cristenheit.
would he wholly the Christendom.

dô daz hie wart geseit,
when that here became told,

dô wart dem herren gar zorn.
then became to-the lord wholly anger.

der edele künic wol geborn
the noble king well born

vil balde sich besande
very quickly himself summoned

mit den kristen in dem lande.
with the Christians in the land.

do die fürsten ze hove kâmen
when the princes to court came

und disiu mære vernâmen,
and these tidings heard,

beide arme und rîche
both poor and rich

jâhen alle gelîche,
said all alike,

sie wolden ir lant gerne wern.
they would their land gladly defend.

sie begunden hervart swern
they began campaign to-swear

mit willen ûf die heidenschaft.
with will against the heathendom.

si gewunnen vil grôze kraft,
they won very great force,

vil manic tûsent ze wer.
very many-a thousand for defense.

dô leite der künic sîn her
then led the king his host

ûf ein heide, diu was breit.
onto a heath, which was broad.

des was der herzoge gemeit
of-that was the duke merry

daz er dâ solde vehten.
that he there should fight.

des lobte er unsern trehten
for-that praised he our Lord

daz er dâ strîten solde.
that he there fight should.

und wie ern drumbe wolde
and how he-him there-for would

rîchen und immer êren,
enrich and ever honor,

swenn er solde kêren,
when he should turn,

daz tet er im allez kunt.
that made he to-him all known.

des wart vil maniger ungesunt.
of-that became very many-a-one hurt.

Die heiden kâmen mit ir kraft.
The heathens came with their force.

doch wurden ir vil schadehaft
yet became of-them many harmed

des tages in dem wîge.
of-the day in the battle.

die vil smaln stîge
the very narrow paths

wurden wît durchhouwen.
became widely hewn-through.

man mohte wunder schouwen
one might wonder behold

des tages in dem strîte.
of-the day in the strife.

der herzoge kam enzîte
the duke came in-time

mit des küniges ingesinde.
with the king's household.

der rise truoc vil swinde
the giant carried very swiftly

den vanen gên der heidenschaft.
the banner toward the heathendom.

dô tet vil guote ritterschaft
then did very good knighthood

der herzoge und sîn schar.
the duke and his troop.

die sîne im volgten vaste dar.
the his him followed hard thither.

waz er dô sper zerbrach
what he then of-spears broke

und wie manigen er nider stach,
and how many-a-one he down stabbed,

daz möhte ich iu müelîche sagen.
that might I to-you toilsomely tell.

der van wart alsô wol getragen
the banner became so well carried

daz dâ vil maniger tôt gelac.
that there very many-a-one dead lay.

der strît werte al den tac
the strife lasted all the day

unz diu sunne an den âbent schein.
until the sun toward the evening shone.

sie hiuwen stahel unde bein
they hewed steel and bone

daz daz bluot dar nâch flôz.
that the blood there after flowed.

die heiden wâren meistic blôz.
the heathens were mostly bare.

des wurden ir vil manige schar
of-that became of-them very many-a troop

von den cristen verswendet gar.
by the Christians destroyed wholly.

sie sluogen unde stâchen
they struck and stabbed

unz sie die schar durchbrâchen
until they the troop broke-through

dar inne der künic selbe reit,
there in the king self rode,

der ouch vil manlîche streit,
who also very manfully fought,

von Babilôn der rîche.
of Babylon the rich.

gên im kam ritterlîche
toward him came knightly

der herzoge: do er in ersach,
the duke: when he him saw,

den künic er von dem orse stach
the king he from the horse stabbed

und wunde in vil sêre.
and wounded him very sorely.

der herzoge hêre
the duke lordly

vienc in manlîch in grôzer nôt.
caught him manfully in great distress.

dâ lac ein sîn ritter tôt
there lay one his knight dead

der mit im ûf dem mere was,
who with him on the sea was,

der vor den grîfen sît genas.
who from the griffins afterward survived.

Die kristen werten wol ir lant.
The Christians defended well their land.

der herzoge und sîn Gîgant
the duke and his Giant

sluogens als daz vihe nider.
struck-them as the cattle down.

durch nôt die heiden muosen sider
through need the heathens must afterward

flühteclîchen kêren.
fleeingly turn.

mit manigem verchsêren
with many-a mortal-wound

muosens rûmen daz wal.
must-they leave the battlefield.

die kristen sigeten über al
the Christians conquered over all

swâ sie ûf dem velde striten.
wherever they on the field fought.

der heiden her wart sô durchriten
the heathens' host became so ridden-through

daz die kristen den sige nâmen.
that the Christians the victory took.

dô sie zesamene kâmen,
when they together came,

des was der künic vil frô.
of-that was the king very glad.

mit den sînen kêrte er dô
with the his turned he then

wider gên sîner houbetstat.
back toward his capital.

dem heidenschen künige er dô bat
for-the heathen king he then bade

heilen sîne wunden.
heal his wounds.

die wurden im wol verbunden.
they became to-him well bound.

do er den siechtuom überwant,
when he the sickness overcame,

dô sande er wider in sîn lant
then sent he back into his land

und hiez im die fürsten gwinnen,
and bade to-him the princes fetch,

daz sie im mit minnen
that they to-him with love

wider den künic hulfen dingen
against the king helped treat

und sîn ungemach ringen.
and his hardship lighten.

sîne gîsel er des sazte
his hostages he of-that set

unz er in alles des ergazte
until he him of-all that repaid

swaz er im schaden hâte getân,
whatever he to-him harm had done,

daz sie des suone solden hân
that they of-it reconciliation should have

die wîl sie beide mohten leben.
the while they both might live.

des wart dô sicherheit gegeben
of-that became then surety given

daz sie daz wâr liezen.
that they that true let.

die gevangen sie dô hiezen
the captives they then bade

beidenthalben lâzen.
on-both-sides release.

des strîtes sie vergâzen
of-the strife they forgot

daz es nimmer mêr gedâht wart.
that of-it never more thought became.

do begunde ze Jêrusalêm um sîn vart
then began to Jerusalem about his journey

der herzoge dem künige sagen
the duke to-the king to-tell

und vil inneclîche klagen
and very inwardly lament

sîn manicvalden arbeit.
his manifold toil.

daz was dem von Môrlande leit
that was to-him of Moorland grievous

daz er dâ wolde niht bestân.
that he there would not remain.

iedoch bevalh er in dem künige sân
yet commended he him to-the king at-once

von Babilôn ûf sîn frümekeit,
of Babylon upon his valor,

daz er in mit gewarheit
that he him with safety

ze Jêrusalêm bræht in die stat.
to Jerusalem brought into the city.

vil flîzeclîchen er des bat.
very diligently he of-that begged.

der künic im lobte alzehant
the king to-him promised at-once

daz er in frumte gesant
that he him should-dispatch sent

dar oder swar er selbe wolde:
thither or whither he self would:

des er im immer danken solde,
for-that he to-him ever thank should,

swann er gefriesche diu mære,
whenever he learned the tidings,

und im immer deste holder wære.
and to-him ever the more-gracious were.

Dô daz alsô gevestet wart,
When that so fastened became,

der herzoge schicte sîne vart.
the duke arranged his journey.

der künic ouch niht langer beit.
the king also not longer waited.

er nam urloup unde reit
he took leave and rode

ze dem künige und ze sîner diet.
to the king and to his folk.

der herzoge ouch von hove schiet
the duke also from court parted

mit manicvalder êre.
with manifold honor.

im gap der künic hêre
to-him gave the king lordly

zwêne soumære,
two pack-horses,

geladen mit golde swære,
loaded with gold heavy,

und ein dromedâr wol getân.
and a dromedary well made.

dô fuor der ellende man
then fared the exiled man

und al sîn massenîe
and all his household

gên Allexandrîe
toward Alexandria

mit dem von Babilonje lant.
with the of Babylon land.

in sînem hove wont der wîgant
in his court dwelt the fighter

einen mânet unde mêr.
a month and more.

dô mante er den künic hêr
then urged he the king lordly

daz er an sîn edelkeit gedæhte
that he on his nobility thought

und in ze Jêrusalêm bræhte,
and him to Jerusalem brought,

als er im lobte und gehiez.
as he to-him promised and pledged.

der künic dô balde gâhen hiez
the king then quickly hasten bade

sîner manne viere
of-his men four

daz sie den degen ziere
that they the thane fine

bræhten ze Jêrusalêm ze lande,
brought to Jerusalem to land,

unde gap dem wîgande
and gave to-the fighter

durch sîn grôze frümekeit
for his great valor

golt unde pheller breit,
gold and brocade broad,

daz ein olbende kûme truoc.
that a camel hardly carried.
der künic bôt im genuoc
the king offered to-him enough
beide wirde und êre.
both worthiness and honor.
dô nam der fürste hêre
then took the prince lordly
urloup und schiet dannen
leave and parted thence
mit zwein tûsent mannen
with two thousand men
ze Jêrusalêm in daz lant:
to Jerusalem into the land:
des fröwete sich der wîgant.
of-that rejoiced himself the fighter.
Do er ze Jêrusalêm kam
When he to Jerusalem came
und man diu mære vernam
and one the tidings heard
daz der fürste wære komen
that the prince were come
von dem sô vil wunder was vernomen,
of whom so much wonder was heard,
des fröweten sich wîp unde man.
of-that rejoiced themselves women and men.
wol eine mîle gên im dan
well one mile toward him thence
sie riten unde giengen,
they rode and went,
dâ sie den helt enphiengen
where they the hero received
in daz lant mit grôzen êren.
into the land with great honors.

dô fuorten sie den hêren
then led they the lord

in daz münster al zehant.
into the minster all at-once.

aldâ opherte der wîgant
there offered the fighter

gote ze êren ûf sîn grap.
to-God to honors upon his grave.

sîn wunder er halp dar gap
his wonders he half there gave

und ander manige rîcheit,
and other many-a richness,

edel gesteine golt und pheller breit,
noble gems gold and brocade broad,

der man vil mit im dar truoc.
of-which one much with him there carried.

ze dem tempel gap er ouch genuoc
to the temple gave he also enough

und swâ er heilige stete vant.
and wherever he holy places found.

also wont der edele wîgant
so dwelt the noble fighter

ime lande mêre danne ein jâr.
in-the land more than a year.

die wîle frumte er, daz ist wâr,
the while wrought he, that is true,

den heiden manic ungemach.
to-the heathens many-a hardship.

vil dicke man den helt sach
very often one the hero saw

vil angestlîche rîten
very perilously ride

und mit den heiden strîten,
and with the heathens fight,

swâ sie zesamene kâmen,
wherever they together came,

daz die heiden von in nâmen
that the heathens from them took

schaden unde schande,
harm and shame,

daz er sîn wîgande
that he his fighters

wol mit êren brâhte dan.
well with honors brought thence.

des dûhte er sie ein werder man.
of-that seemed he to-them a worthy man.

XX · THE RECONCILIATION

Pilgrims carry Ernst's fame home, and Otto, moved by Adelheit, learns that Heinrich lied. Ernst returns by Bari and Rome and comes secretly to Bamberg at Christmas, where Adelheit and the princes arrange that he fall at the emperor's feet during mass. Otto forgives him before recognizing him and, pressed by the princes, holds to it; Ernst shows his wonders and gives some to the emperor, who has his story written down and restores all his lands.

Der herre alsô daz jâr vertreip
The lord so the year passed

daz er vil selden beleip,
that he very seldom remained,

ern tæt den heiden etewaz:
unless-he did to-the heathens something:

dâ von sie wâren im gehaz.
there from they were to-him hostile.

er was al zît gên in ze wer.
he was all time against them at defense.

die zît kâmen über mer
the time came over sea

bilgerîn von diutschem lande,
pilgrims from German land,

die dem wîgande
who to-the fighter

diu rehten mære sageten
the right tidings told

und in niht verdageten
and to-him not kept-silent

wie man sîn dishalp gedâhte.
how one of-him on-this-side thought.

vil maniger ouch von im brâhte
very many-a-one also from him brought

mære so er her wider kam.
tidings when he hither back came.

dâ von der keiser dô vernam
there from the emperor then heard

von im diu rehten mære
of him the right tidings

daz er ze Jêrusalêm wære
that he at Jerusalem were

und wære vil wol gesunt.
and were very well healthy.

daz tet im ein ritter kunt
that made to-him a knight known

der in dort hâte gesehen.
who him there had seen.

er begunde im wærlîche jehen
he began to-him truly to-say

umb alliu sîniu wunder
about all his wonders

sagte er im besunder,
told he to-him separately,

und allez daz im was geschehen,
and all that to-him was happened,

und als er dort hâte gesehen
and as he there had seen

sîn wunder maniger slahte,
his wonders of-many kinds,

und des mit im brâhte
and of-that with him brought

wârez urkünde
true witness

und daz bî im noch fünde.
and that by him still found.

do enbôt der keiser rîche
then sent-word the emperor rich

den fürsten algelîche
to-the princes all-alike

von liebe disiu mære,
from love these tidings,

daz Ernst der herzoge wære
that Ernst the duke were

ze Jêrusalêm wol gesunt.
at Jerusalem well healthy.

do in diu mære wurden kunt,
when to-them the tidings became known,

dô was in liep um sîn leben.
then was to-them dear about his life.

sie sprâchen 'nu sî im vergeben
they spoke 'now be to-him forgiven

al daz er uns habe getân.
all that he to-us have done.

wir sulen dem edelen man
we shall to-the noble man

helfen umb des rîches hulde
help about the realm's favor

und des herzogen schulde
and the duke's guilt

hin legen mit minnen
thither lay with love

und des keisers hulde gewinnen.' 5740
and the emperor's favor win.'

Dem keiser wart alsô nôt,
To-the emperor became so need,

als ez von himele got bôt,
as it from heaven God commanded,

durch der künigîn Adelheiden bete,
through the queen Adelheit's prayer,

daz er im unreht tete,
that he to-him wrong did,

Ernest dem herzogen: 5745
to-Ernst the duke:

und daz in hæte verlogen
and that him had lied-about

der phalzgrâve Heinrîch.
the count-palatine Heinrich.

do enbôt im der künic rîch
then sent-word to-him the king rich

daz er tougenlîche
that he secretly

kæme vür daz rîche: 5750
should-come before the realm:

al daz er im hæte genomen,
all that he from-him had taken,

daz wolde erm wider lâzen komen
that would he-to-him back let come

und wolde dem tiurlîchen degen
and would to-the precious thane

allez sîn dinc vergeben
all his thing forgive

und ergetzen immer mit guote:
and repay ever with goods:

des wære ime wol ze muote.
of-that were to-him well in mind.

Ouch wil ich iu sagen mêr:
Also will I to-you tell more:

die wîle daz der fürste hêr
the while that the prince lordly

ze Jêrusalêm wont in dem lant,
at Jerusalem dwelt in the land,

in was der werde wîgant
to-them was the worthy fighter

liep durch sîn grôze frümekeit.
dear for his great valor.

den heiden frumte er solch leit
to-the heathens wrought he such sorrow

daz sie den schaden muosen klagen.
that they the harm must lament.

der herre hôrte dicke sagen
the lord heard often tell

daz der rœmisch keiser rîche
that the Roman emperor rich

vil genædeclîche
very graciously

rede von im tæte
speech of him made

und got des dicke bæte
and God of-that often begged

daz er heim ze lande kæme,
that he home to land should-come,

daz er von ime vernæme
that he from him heard

diu manicvalden wunder:
the manifold wonders:

die fürsten alle besunder
the princes all separately

rieten wol sîniu dinc.
counseled well his things.

urloup nam der jungelinc
leave took the youth

ze Jêrusalêm übr al die stat.
at Jerusalem over all the city.

der herre sich dô wîsen bat
the lord himself then be-guided bade

von Jêrusalêm der bürge abe
from Jerusalem the castle down

gegen Ackers in die habe.
toward Acre into the harbor.

dô schiffete er ûf dem sê:
then sailed he on the sea:

sehs wochen unde mê
six weeks and more

fuor er dannen ûf dem mer.
fared he thence on the sea.

in treip der wint âne wer
him drove the wind without defense

dâ sie liten grôze nôt.
where they suffered great distress.

dô lac sîn Plathuof tôt:
then lay his Flatfoot dead:

daz muote in zewâre.
that grieved him truly.

in die habe ze Bâre
into the harbor at Bari

kam sîn schif gegangen:
came his ship gone:

dâ wart er wol enphangen.
there became he well received.

Ê daz er schiet dan,
Before that he parted thence,

sîn opher leit der küene man
his offering laid the bold man

ûf sante Niclâsen grap.
upon Saint Nicholas's grave.

vil willeclîchen er dar gap
very willingly he there gave

lieht pheller unde golt breit.
bright brocade and gold broad.

dannen schiet der helt gemeit
thence parted the hero merry

und kam ze Rôme in kurzer stunt.
and came to Rome in short while.

dô daz den Rômæren wart kunt,
when that to-the Romans became known,

dô wart er wol enphangen.
then became he well received.

geriten und gegangen
ridden and walked

kam gên im vil manic man.
came toward him very many-a man.

do beleiten sie den werden man
then escorted they the worthy man

ze sante Pêter in daz münster wît
to Saint Peter into the minster wide

dâ vil heiltuomes lît.
where much relics lies.

dâ gap er ouch daz opher sîn
there gave he also the offering his

von guoten tuochen sîdîn,
of good cloths silken,

rîche pheller von golde,
rich brocade of gold,

daz niht bezzer wesen solde.
that not better be should.

ê daz er von in fuor dan,
before that he from them fared thence,

do behielden sie den küenen man
then kept they the bold man

ze Rôm mit grôzen êren.
at Rome with great honors.

dâ dienten sie dem hêren
there served they the lord

siben tage unde mê,
seven days and more,

daz sin niht liezen dannen ê
that they-him not let thence before

keine wîs von in komen,
in-any way from them come,

unz daz sie hâten vernomen
until that they had heard

sîn mære besunder.
his tidings separately.

sîn seltsæniu wunder
his strange wonders

dûhten sie vil wunderlîch.
seemed to-them very wondrous.

dô bat sie der fürste rîch
then bade them the prince rich

got von himele bewarn,
God from heaven guard,

wan er wolde gerne varn
for he would gladly fare

mit ir urloube dan.
with their leave thence.

daz was in leide getân:
that was to-them sorrowfully done:

doch muosen sie in lâzen varn.
yet must they him let fare.

sie bâten in got bewarn.
they begged him God guard.

also kêrt von in der wîgant.
so turned from them the fighter.

er kam ze Beiern in daz lant,
he came to Bavaria into the land,

daz in nieman bekande.
that him no-one recognized.

verholn er dô sande
secretly he then sent

nâch einem sînem man
after one his man

an den er sich mohte lân,
on whom he himself might rely,

daz er unvermeldet wære.
that he unbetrayed were.

der sagte im dô diu mære
he told to-him then the tidings

daz ze Babenberc wesen solde
that at Bamberg be should

ein hof, dâ der keiser wolde
a court, where the emperor would

krône tragen, als ich iu sage,
crown wear, as I to-you tell,

ze wîhennaht an Kristes tage:
at Christmas on Christ's day:

daz hæte er wærlîche vernomen.
that had he truly heard.

'dâ sult ir, herre, hin komen,
'there shall you, lord, thither come,

ir und grâve Wetzel verholn.
you and count Wetzel secretly.

ich behalte iu wol verstoln
I keep for-you well hidden

iur gesinde, swaz ir mir des lât,
your household, whatever you to-me of-it leave,

daz ir wol ân angest gât,
that you well without fear go,

daz des nieman inne wirt
that of-it no-one aware becomes

die wîle ir under wegen birt.'
the while you on the-way are.'

Daz dûhte sie dô wol getân.
That seemed to-them then well done.

dannen huoben sich die man
thence raised themselves the men

gên Babenberc vil drâte
toward Bamberg very quickly

an Kristes âbent spâte
on Christ's eve late

dâ bî nâhe in einen walt.
there by near into a forest.

dâ bliben dô die helde balt
there remained then the heroes bold

unz hin gên der mettîn.
until thither toward the matins.

dô giengens zuo der bürge în
then went-they to the castle in

verholn in den stunden,
secretly at the hours,

da si heimlîch ligen funden
where they privately lie found
die küniginne an ir gebete.
the queen at her prayer.
dô vielen sie dâ ze stete
then fell they there in place
vür die küniginne.
before the queen.
dô sie ir wart inne,
when she of-them became aware,
sie frâgte wer daz wære.
she asked who that were.
der grâve sagte ir mære,
the count told to-her tidings,
ez wære der herzoge ir sun:
it were the duke her son:
daz si gnâde an im solde tuon
that she grace on him should do
und in hulfe umbe hulde,
and him helped about favor,
daz der keiser die schulde
that the emperor the guilt
ime durch got ruochte lân.
to-him for God deigned let.
ûf spranc diu küniginne sân
up sprang the queen at-once
und umbevienc in zuo der stunt.
and embraced him at the hour.
sie kuste in dicke an sînen munt
she kissed him often on his mouth
mit weinenden ougen.
with weeping eyes.

sie hiez den helt tougen
she bade the hero secretly

gên zuo der herberge sîn.
go to the lodging his.

daz gebôt im diu künigîn
that commanded him the queen

daz er vür den keiser niht kæme
that he before the emperor not should-come

unz er vil rehte vernæme
until he very rightly heard

daz man Kristes messe sunge:
that one Christ's mass sang:

daz er vür den künic drunge;
that he before the king pressed;

alsô bereit solde er wesen,
so ready should he be,

so daz êwangeljum wurde gelesen,
when the gospel became read,

und im viele an den fuoz.
and to-him fell at the foot.

'die wîl ich die fürsten sprechen muoz,
'the while I the princes speak must,

daz sie uns helfen dar zuo.'
that they us help there to.'

dannen gienc der fürste duo
thence went the prince then

an ein stat verborgen.
to a place hidden.

aller sîner sorgen
of-all his cares

er des tages ein ende sach:
he of-the day an end saw:

von gotes helfe daz geschach.
from God's help that happened.

Dô diu rede was ergân,
When the speech was gone,

diu frowe zehant dar gewan
the lady at-once there fetched

die fürsten alle gelîche
the princes all alike

und sagete in tougenlîche
and told to-them secretly

von ir sune diu mære,
of her son the tidings,

daz er komen wære
that he come were

ûf ir aller gnâde dar:
upon their all grace there:

daz sie ir bete næmen war
that they of-her request took heed

und daz durch got tæten
and that for God did

und den keiser umbe in bæten
and the emperor about him begged

daz er im lieze sîne hulde
that he to-him let his favor

und ime vergæbe sîne schulde,
and to-him forgave his guilt,

daz si inz bevolhen liezen sîn.
that they them-it commended let be.

do gelobten sie der künigîn
then promised they to-the queen

daz sie sich durch den werden degen
that they themselves for the worthy thane

wolden alles des verwegen
would of-all that forgo

gewaldes des sie möhten hân.
of-power which they might have.

er müese im die hulde lân
he must to-him the favor let

oder verzîhn vil übellîch.
or refuse very ill.

daz lobtens alle gelîch.
that promised-they all alike.

des was diu küniginne frô.
of-that was the queen glad.

der keiser garte sich dô
the emperor girded himself then

in sîn küniclîch gewant.
in his kingly clothing.

die fürsten kâmen alzehant
the princes came at-once

in daz münster frône.
into the minster holy.

der keiser under krône
the emperor under crown

bî der küniginnen stuont,
by the queen stood,

als sie ze hôchgezîte tuont.
as they at festivals do.

ein bischof vor in messe sanc.
a bishop before them mass sang.

von liuten vil grôz gedranc
of people very great throng

in dem wîten münster was.
in the wide minster was.

do man daz êwangeljum gelas,
when one the gospel read,

der bischof trat ûf den lector
the bishop stepped onto the lectern
und sagt der kristenheite vor
and told to-the Christendom before
die süezen gotes lêre.
the sweet God's teaching.
dise ensûmten sich niht mêre:
these delayed themselves not more:
sie kâmen wullen und barfuoz.
they came in-wool and barefoot.
sie vielen dem künige an sînen fuoz:
they fell to-the king at his foot:
sîner gnâden sie in bâten.
for-his grace they him begged.
die fürsten dar zuo trâten
the princes there to stepped
und manten in sunderlîchen
and urged him separately
daz er durch got den rîchen
that he for God the rich
und durch sîne marter hêre
and for his passion lordly
und durch des heiligen tages êre
and for the holy day's honor
in sîn hulde lieze hân.
him his favor let have.
'swaz er mir nu hât getân,
'whatever he to-me now has done,
hæte er mir genomen mîn leben,
(if)-had he from-me taken my life,
daz sî im durch got vergeben.
that be to-him for God forgiven.
ich wil michs gên im begeben.'
I will myself-of-it toward him give-up.'

niht erkande er den degen:
not recognized he the thane:

er rihte in ûf zuo der stunt
he raised him up at the hour

und kuste in an sînen munt.
and kissed him on his mouth.

des gnâdet er im tugentlîch.
for-that thanked he him virtuously.

do erkande in der fürste rîch,
then recognized him the prince rich,

do er im under ougen sach.
when he him under eyes looked.

ez gerou in deiz geschach.
it rued him that-it happened.

als er in erblihte,
when he him caught-sight-of,

der keiser nider nihte:
the emperor down bowed:

er wolde im niht sprechen zuo.
he would to-him not speak to.

die fürsten riefen alle duo
the princes called all then

'herre her keiser rîche,
'lord sir emperor rich,

daz ir sô offenlîche
what you so openly

vor dem rîche habt getân,
before the realm have done,

daz sult ir billîch stæte lân:
that shall you rightly steadfast let:

ir liezetz durch uns und durch got.
you let-it for us and for God.

ir welt iu selbe grôzen spot
you will to-you self great mockery

machen swenne ir alsô tuot.'
make when you so do.'

'nu ez iuch herren dunket guot
'now it you lords seems good

und ir sîn gnâde wellet hân,
and you of-his grace will have,

sô wil ich mînen zorn lân
so will I my anger let

und wil im immer wesen holt.'
and will to-him ever be gracious.'

er gap im silber unde golt
he gave to-him silver and gold

und ergazte in frümeclîche.
and repaid him worthily.

die fürsten gemeinlîche
the princes in-common

verzigen ir schaden ûf in dô
renounced their harm upon him then

und wâren sîner künfte frô.
and were of-his coming glad.

Dô man die messe dâ gesanc,
When one the mass there sang,

umbe in wart vil grôz gedranc
about him became very great throng

von allen den hêren.
of all the lords.

die enphiengen in mit êren
they received him with honors

und bâten in willekomen sîn.
and bade him welcome be.

sîn muoter diu künigîn
his mother the queen

was des sunes von herzen frô.
was of-the son from heart glad.

der keiser in frâgte dô
the emperor him asked then

wa sîn wunderlîch gesinde wære.
where his wondrous household were.

dô sagte im der fürste mære
then told to-him the prince famous

'[ez ist] ze Beiern in dem lande.'
'[it is] at Bavaria in the land.'

der keiser boten sande
the emperor messengers sent

die tac und naht gâhten
who day and night hastened

unz sie ez allez brâhten
until they it all brought

ze hove vür den keiser rîch.
to court before the emperor rich.

ez dûhte vil wunderlîch
it seemed very wondrous

alle diez gesâhen.
to-all who-it saw.

mit gelîchem munt sie jâhen
with like mouth they said

si gesæhen nie niht solhes mêre.
they saw never anything such more.

dô bat im der keiser hêre
then bade him the emperor lordly

ein teil sîner wunder geben.
a part of-his wonders give.

dô begunde er widerstreben,
then began he to-resist,

wan er tet ez ungerne.
for he did it unwillingly.

doch liez er im den Einsterne
yet let he to-him the One-star

und dem diu ôren wârn sô lanc
and to-him the ears were so long

und der selbe vil wol sanc
and who self very well sang

und einz der kleinen liutelîn.
and one of-the small little-people.

mit den andern muose er selbe sîn,
with the others must he self be,

und den grôzen Gîgant
and the great Giant

brâht er ze Beiern in daz lant:
brought he to Bavaria into the land:

des wolde er nieman lâzen phlegen.
of-that would he to-no-one let take-care.

der keiser behielt dô den degen
the emperor kept then the thane

bî im wol bî zwelf tagen,
by him well about twelve days,

daz er im allez muose sagen
that he to-him all must tell

diu manicvalden wunder
the manifold wonders

und wa er gewan diu kunder,
and where he won the wonders,

daz er niht dar an vergaz,
that he not there on forgot,

daz er nie an daz gerihte saz
that he never at the court sat

noch ûz sîner kemenâten kam,
nor out-of his chamber came,

unz er diu wunder von im vernam.
until he the wonders from him heard.

dô liez ers niht belîben,
then let he-it not remain,

der keiser hiez dô schrîben
the emperor bade then write

war umbe und wie er in vertreip
where for and how he him drove-out

und wie lange er in dem lande bleip
and how long he in the land remained

und wier hin fuor und wider kam.
and how-he thither fared and back came.

swer disiu mære von im vernam,
whoever these tidings from him heard,

der muose weinen alzehant.
he must weep at-once.

dô liez er allez sîn lant
then left he all his land

wider dem fürsten hêren.
back to-the prince lordly.

sît gesaz mit grôzen êren
afterward sat with great honors

bî sînem erbe der ziere degen.
by his inheritance the fine thane.

er begunde hêrlîche phlegen
he began lordly to-take-care

sîner manne und sîner lande,
of-his men and of-his lands,

gelîche einem wîgande,
like a fighter,

daz er gap unde lêch.
that he gave and lent.

der keiser in niht verzêch
the emperor him not refused

unze er was rîche als ê:
until he was rich as before:

es wart niht min, es wurde mê.
it became not less, it became more.

er hâte in liep unz an den tôt:
he had him dear until to the death:

alsô übrwant er sîne nôt.
so overcame he his distress.